This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

A propos de ce livre

Ceci est une copie numérique d'un ouvrage conservé depuis des générations dans les rayonnages d'une bibliothèque avant d'être numérisé avec précaution par Google dans le cadre d'un projet visant à permettre aux internautes de découvrir l'ensemble du patrimoine littéraire mondial en ligne.

Ce livre étant relativement ancien, il n'est plus protégé par la loi sur les droits d'auteur et appartient à présent au domaine public. L'expression "appartenir au domaine public" signifie que le livre en question n'a jamais été soumis aux droits d'auteur ou que ses droits légaux sont arrivés à expiration. Les conditions requises pour qu'un livre tombe dans le domaine public peuvent varier d'un pays à l'autre. Les livres libres de droit sont autant de liens avec le passé. Ils sont les témoins de la richesse de notre histoire, de notre patrimoine culturel et de la connaissance humaine et sont trop souvent difficilement accessibles au public.

Les notes de bas de page et autres annotations en marge du texte présentes dans le volume original sont reprises dans ce fichier, comme un souvenir du long chemin parcouru par l'ouvrage depuis la maison d'édition en passant par la bibliothèque pour finalement se retrouver entre vos mains.

Consignes d'utilisation

Google est fier de travailler en partenariat avec des bibliothèques à la numérisation des ouvrages appartenant au domaine public et de les rendre ainsi accessibles à tous. Ces livres sont en effet la propriété de tous et de toutes et nous sommes tout simplement les gardiens de ce patrimoine. Il s'agit toutefois d'un projet coûteux. Par conséquent et en vue de poursuivre la diffusion de ces ressources inépuisables, nous avons pris les dispositions nécessaires afin de prévenir les éventuels abus auxquels pourraient se livrer des sites marchands tiers, notamment en instaurant des contraintes techniques relatives aux requêtes automatisées.

Nous vous demandons également de:

+ *Ne pas utiliser les fichiers à des fins commerciales* Nous avons conçu le programme Google Recherche de Livres à l'usage des particuliers. Nous vous demandons donc d'utiliser uniquement ces fichiers à des fins personnelles. Ils ne sauraient en effet être employés dans un quelconque but commercial.

+ *Ne pas procéder à des requêtes automatisées* N'envoyez aucune requête automatisée quelle qu'elle soit au système Google. Si vous effectuez des recherches concernant les logiciels de traduction, la reconnaissance optique de caractères ou tout autre domaine nécessitant de disposer d'importantes quantités de texte, n'hésitez pas à nous contacter. Nous encourageons pour la réalisation de ce type de travaux l'utilisation des ouvrages et documents appartenant au domaine public et serions heureux de vous être utile.

+ *Ne pas supprimer l'attribution* Le filigrane Google contenu dans chaque fichier est indispensable pour informer les internautes de notre projet et leur permettre d'accéder à davantage de documents par l'intermédiaire du Programme Google Recherche de Livres. Ne le supprimez en aucun cas.

+ *Rester dans la légalité* Quelle que soit l'utilisation que vous comptez faire des fichiers, n'oubliez pas qu'il est de votre responsabilité de veiller à respecter la loi. Si un ouvrage appartient au domaine public américain, n'en déduisez pas pour autant qu'il en va de même dans les autres pays. La durée légale des droits d'auteur d'un livre varie d'un pays à l'autre. Nous ne sommes donc pas en mesure de répertorier les ouvrages dont l'utilisation est autorisée et ceux dont elle ne l'est pas. Ne croyez pas que le simple fait d'afficher un livre sur Google Recherche de Livres signifie que celui-ci peut être utilisé de quelque façon que ce soit dans le monde entier. La condamnation à laquelle vous vous exposeriez en cas de violation des droits d'auteur peut être sévère.

À propos du service Google Recherche de Livres

En favorisant la recherche et l'accès à un nombre croissant de livres disponibles dans de nombreuses langues, dont le français, Google souhaite contribuer à promouvoir la diversité culturelle grâce à Google Recherche de Livres. En effet, le Programme Google Recherche de Livres permet aux internautes de découvrir le patrimoine littéraire mondial, tout en aidant les auteurs et les éditeurs à élargir leur public. Vous pouvez effectuer des recherches en ligne dans le texte intégral de cet ouvrage à l'adresse `http://books.google.com`

ENGLISH SYNTAX
AND
COMPOSITION

EducT 1519.01.228

HARVARD
COLLEGE
LIBRARY

Ruth Charlton
1845 Beacon St
Waban
Mass

1925 – June
C.P.S.

3 2044 102 857 794

Heath's Modern Language Series

EXERCISES

IN

FRENCH SYNTAX AND COMPOSITION

WITH NOTES AND VOCABULARY

BY

JEANNE M. BOUVET

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

Educ T 1519.01.228

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF THE
NEWTON FREE LIBRARY
NOV. 6 1936

COPYRIGHT, 1901,
BY D. C. HEATH & CO.

2 E 7

Printed in U. S. A.

PREFACE.

THE chief obstacle to obtaining the best results from a course in French composition, is usually the student's lack of practice in applying the elementary rules and principles of grammar; yet, these must be mastered if he desires to speak or write the language correctly, or even to read it intelligently. The conviction that this mastery can be obtained only by thorough and systematic work from the foundations, has led to the preparation of a text-book, which I should not venture to submit to the attention of teachers of French, if its practicability had not been thoroughly tested in the class-room.

It is hoped that the novel plan of combining, in the same volume, exercises in grammar and syntax with selections for prose composition, will recommend itself to teachers for reasons of economy and of convenience for reference, but especially because such an arrangement insures progressive work in grammatical construction, side by side with practice in composition, to the end of the course. In schools and colleges where a short elementary grammar only is used, this book should be found especially valuable as supplementing or completing the study thus begun, and affording an opportunity to utilize the rules and new facts necessarily acquired in too rapid succession from such works. On the other hand, where more time is devoted to grammar and larger text-books are used, it seems equally necessary to review and emphasize the great universals of the language.

This has been my sole aim in the selection of topics treated in Part I., which lays no claim to grammatical completeness,

but includes a number of subjects offering special difficulties to American students, and on which they need more practice than grammars usually give. The material in these exercises has been graded with the utmost care, so that, with copious footnotes and a complete vocabulary, students might be able to translate the first of them early in their course. My endeavor has been to make the majority of the sentences mean something, to make them express a thought or an idea in a language that should be simple, natural, and sufficiently idiomatic. Rules and inflections to which pupils can be easily referred in any grammar previously studied, have been omitted, while certain subjects are supplied with extra exercises.

Part II. consists of interesting selections for connected translation, taken from French sources and relating to French topics, chiefly historical, biographical, and literary. The style of these selections, however, is neither stiff nor formal, as is too apt to be the case with composition work on these subjects. My aim has not been to impose upon the pupil a polish and an elegance of expression which would be unnatural to him if he were using his own tongue, but to furnish him with ordinary, though correct and idiomatic, English, so constructed that, with the aids given, it might readily be turned into good French. The size and character of the vocabulary will show that quite a variety of styles has been exemplified.

The book is planned in such a way that continuous work in syntax can be made to alternate with the translation of the connected prose, after the first lessons in grammar have been reviewed. In a college course of three years, the grammatical review of the first year might extend through the study of the pronouns; that of the second, through the conditional constructions; that of the third, devoted to the study of the subjunctive and past participle. This work is so graded in difficulty that each division may be supplemented by one of the sections of Part II., marked respectively *Easy Prose Composition*, *More*

Advanced Prose Composition, and *Idiomatic Prose Composition*, thus varying the lessons, but effecting a closer connection between practice in composition and the higher study of grammar, — subjects too often separated. Of course, other schemes of arrangement may be devised according to the age of pupils and the length of the course in different schools.

I would strongly recommend that instructors require frequent oral and written reviews of both exercises and selections after correction. I need not say that the systematic study of regular and irregular verbs is an indispensable part of the plan of work here suggested.

Great pains have been taken to make the notes easily comprehensible to the student and adapted to his needs; in the amount of help given, I have considered the necessities of each exercise rather than its position in the book. The vocabulary also was made slowly and with much care, so as to secure completeness and accuracy in that part of the book where these are most desirable. As, however, errors and omissions are only too possible, any corrections or suggestions will be gratefully received.

JEANNE M. BOUVET.

CHICAGO, January, 1901.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART I.

EXERCISES IN GRAMMAR AND SYNTAX.

PAGE

1. The Partitive Article (*Some* or *Any*) 3
2. Syntax of the Definite Article 5
3. Omission of the Article 6
4. Plural of Nouns 7
5. Feminine and Plural of Adjectives 9
6. Conjunctive Personal Pronouns 10
   a. Two Pronoun Objects before the Verb in Declarative, Interrogative, and Negative Sentences 11
   b. Personal Pronoun Objects of Verbs in the Imperative Mood 12
   c. Personal Pronoun Objects of Reflexive Verbs in the Imperative Mood 13
   d. *En, Y, Le* 14
   e. Direct and Indirect Objects combined with *En* and *Y* after Verbs in the Imperative Mood 17
7. Disjunctive Personal Pronouns 18
8. Possessive Pronouns 20
9. Demonstrative Pronouns 21
10. When to use "ce," when "il" with *Être* 25
11. Interrogative Pronouns 28
12. Relative Pronouns 31
13. Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns 34
14. *Tout, Même, Quelque, Quel . . . que* 38
15. Verbs conjugated with *Être* 40
16. Reflexive Verbs 41
17. Active Voice with *On* for Subject 43

PAGE

18. Four Important Modal Verbs 44
    a. *Devoir* 44
    b. *Falloir* 48
    c. *Pouvoir* 52
    d. *Vouloir* 55
19. Uses of the (*a*) Past Indefinite, (*b*) Past Definite, and (*c*) Imperfect 59
20. Conditional Constructions 62
21. The Subjunctive. Principal Cases of its Use 65
    Case I. The Subjunctive depending upon Verbs and Conjunctions 66
    Case II. The Subjunctive depending upon Impersonal Constructions 70
    Case III. The Subjunctive in Relative Clauses 72
    Case IV. The Subjunctive in Negative or Interrogative Sentences 75
22. Minor Cases of the Subjunctive 77
23. Sequence of the Tenses of the Subjunctive with those of the Indicative 78
24. Principal Cases of the Agreement of the Past Participle . . 79
    Case I. The Past Participle used without the Auxiliary . 79
    Case II. The Past Participle used with *Être* 79
    Case III. The Past Participle used with *Avoir* 80
    Case IV. The Past Participle of Reflexive Verbs . . . 80

PART II.

EASY PROSE COMPOSITION.

1. The Childhood of Duguesclin 87
2. Duguesclin and the "Free Companies" 88
3. Duguesclin a Prisoner in Spain 89
4. Duguesclin a Constable of France 90
5. Exploits of Chevalier Bayard 91
6. Anecdotes about Louis XI. 93
7. Henry IV., King of Navarre 94
8. The Youth of Sully 96
9. The Youth of Richelieu 98

PAGE

10. Colbert, Minister of Louis XIV. 99
11. Death of Louis XVI. 100
12. Napoleon Bonaparte 101
13. Marriage of Napoleon with Marie-Louise 102

MORE ADVANCED PROSE COMPOSITION.

1. Les Précieuses Ridicules, by Molière 104
2. An Adventure of Rabelais 105
3. The Story of Jacques Amyot 107
4. Jean-Baptiste Lulli 112
5. La Mare-au-Diable, by George Sand 115
6. The Silent Academy 120
7. Chateaubriand 121

IDIOMATIC PROSE COMPOSITION.

1. Literary Notes on Some Authors of the Seventeenth Century:
   a. Corneille 124
   b. Molière 128
   c. Boileau 131
   d. La Fontaine 133
   e. Racine 137
   f. Madame de Sévigné 139
2. Genius of Balzac compared with that of George Sand . . 143

VOCABULARY 149

PART I.

EXERCISES IN GRAMMAR AND SYNTAX.

EXERCISES IN GRAMMAR AND SYNTAX.

1. THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE (*SOME* OR *ANY*).

Some or *any* may often be omitted in English. Their French equivalents **du, de la, de l', des,** are nearly always expressed. These articles are sometimes changed to **de** or **d'**, without regard to the gender or number of the noun limited. This change is to be noted especially in the following cases:—

a. When an adjective precedes the noun.* If it follows the noun, **du, de la, de l'**, or **des** is used.

b. After adverbs of quantity, such as **beaucoup** = *much* or *many;* **peu** = *little* or *few;* **plus** = *more;* **moins** = *less* or *fewer;* **assez** = *enough;* **trop** = *too much, too many;* **tant** = *so much, so many;* **autant** = *as much, as many,* etc.

c. After verbs in the negative. Affirmative English verbs, followed by the indefinite adjective *no* and *a noun*, are translated into French by the negative form of the verb followed by **de** or **d'**. Ex.: *we have no friends here* = nous **n'avons pas d'amis** ici.

d. When a noun is limited by an adjective phrase composed of **de** and **another noun**; un morceau **de pain** = *a piece of bread;* un bracelet **d'or** = *a gold bracelet;* un lit **de fer** = *an iron bed.* Observe that, in many cases, the descriptive phrase may be

* In a decree, dated July 31, 1900, the Minister of Public Instruction in France authorizes the use of *du, de la, de l', des,* instead of *de* or *d'*, before nouns preceded by adjectives.

converted into a single English noun, which then performs the office of an adjective.

Note. — In the following exercise, as indeed in every case, the student should bear in mind that *some* or *any* must not only be supplied but repeated in the French translation, wherever these words would not be out of place in English.

Exercise 1.

1. Racine had[1] genius. 2. Numerous[2] armies invaded[3] Greece.[4] 3. Madame de Sévigné wrote[5] charming[6] letters. 4. Why do you live alone here? Have you no relatives? no[7] friends? no children? 5. Many people[8] sacrifice[9] the present to the future. 6. Racine and Corneille wrote[10] admirable[6] tragedies. 7. So much goodness reveals[11] a noble[12] soul. 8. I prefer[13] your cloth dress to[14] your silk one.[15] 9. I will not make you[16] any apologies. 10. Alexander conquered[3] immense[2] countries. 11. Racine has less sublimity; Corneille possesses more depth. 12. I know[17] few people[18] capable of sacrificing[19] their interests. 13. Enough wretchedness torments the people.[20] 14. The queen wore[1] a magnificent necklace of diamonds. 15. Bossuet's[21] eloquence has much loftiness; that[22] of Fénelon has much grace,[23] but it has not as much force.[24] 16. Venice has incomparable[2] marvels; her[25] ancient splendor has left ineffaceable[2] memories. 17. Too much rest lessens the vigor of the body. 18. We ate[5] a piece of cake and[26] drank[5] a glass of wine. 19. There is[27] never any oil in your lamp. 20. Little[2] causes have often[28] produced great[2] effects.

[1] use imperfect. [2] all adjectives in this exercise should precede the noun unless otherwise indicated; turn 'some numerous armies.' [3] past definite. [4] requires definite article. [5] past indefinite. [6] place after the noun. [7] do not repeat *pas*. [8] *monde*, m. [9] singular. [10] past indefinite of *composer*. [11] *annoncer*. [12] *belle*. [13] *aimer mieux*. [14] *que*. [15] repeat the noun. [16] place before the verb. [17] *connaître*. [18] *gens*, m. pl. [19] infinitive present. [20] *peuple*, m. [21] 'the eloquence

of.' [22] *celle.* [23] *douceur*, f. [24] *énergie*, f. [25] *son.* [26] repeat the subject. [27] put *n'* before the verb and replace *pas* by *jamais.* [28] place after participle.

2. SYNTAX OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

The definite article is used in French: —

1. Before abstract nouns.
2. Before common nouns used in a general sense.
3. Before nouns expressing measure, weight, number, where the indefinite article is used in English.
4. Before geographical names, except towns, and before titles.
5. Before names of sciences and metals.
6. Before parts of the body, instead of the *possessive adjective*, where the meaning is not equivocal.

Exercise 2.

1. Opinion is queen of the world. 2. Happiness is less dependent upon[1] circumstances than upon character. 3. Death, like birth, is a mystery of nature. 4. Riches rarely[2] profit those who acquire them. 5. To encourage virtue is to punish vice. 6. The world was[3] made for man, and man for heaven.[4] 7. Work is the inexhaustible[2] source of pure[2] and real[2] pleasures. 8. Noble[5] deeds excite admiration. 9. Vices form a chain of which[6] selfishness is the first link. 10. There are four maladies difficult to cure: love of self, avarice, vainglory, and ambition. 11. Man is ever the same; at ten,[7] he is enticed by sweets; at thirty, by pleasures; at forty, by ambition; at fifty, by avarice. 12. This beautiful lace costs[8] fifty francs a metre. 13. Astronomy is the science of the heavenly[2] bodies. 14. The Romans conquered[9] Asia as well as Africa. 15. Happiness depends more upon[10] the affections than upon[11] events. 16. Great thoughts come from the heart. 17. The highest mountains of the globe are in Thibet. 18. Fontenelle looked[12] upon life as a dream whose[13] awakening is death.

19. None of the productions of man is[14] eternal. 20. As soon as I am awake,[15] I wash[16] my hands, face, and neck with[17] soap and water.

[1] *de.* [2] place after the word modified. [3] *est.* [4] use plural. [5] *belles*, 'of which the first link is selfishness.' [7] add *ans* after this numeral, but after no other in the sentence. [8] *se vend.* [9] past indefinite. [10] *tient plus aux.* [11] *qu'aux.* [12] imperfect. [13] insert *le.* [14] *n'est.* [15] reduce this clause to *aussitôt éveillé.* [16] reflexive. [17] insert 'some' before both nouns.

3. OMISSION OF THE ARTICLE.

The article is omitted: —

1. When a noun is taken in apposition with another.
2. In proverbial expressions.
3. In enumerations, for the sake of conciseness.
4. Before words used in apostrophe.
5. Before nouns indicating a title, profession, nationality, religious denomination, when these are used adjectively.
6. Before the title of a book or chapter.
7. After the indefinite adjective **quel** = *what*, in exclamations.
8. After names of kings, followed by numerals indicating order in a dynasty.
9. After such prepositions as **en, avec, sans, par, sur,** etc., when they combine with the following noun to form an adverbial or adjective phrase.
10. After certain verbs, followed directly by nouns with which they frequently form idioms, as: —

Avoir coutume de, *to be used to.*
Avoir envie de, *to have a mind to.*
Avoir pitié de, *to pity.*
Avoir raison de, *to be right.*
Ajouter foi à, *to believe in.*
Courir risque de, *to run the risk of.*
Faire bonne chère, *to live well.*
Faire peur à, *to frighten.*
Faire attention à, *to mind.*
Faire cas de, *to value, to think well of.*
Faire plaisir à, *to please, to give pleasure.*
Faire mine de, *to pretend.*
Faire fond sur, *to count upon.*

Exercise 3.

1. Monsieur Thiers was [1] born at [2] Marseilles, a very ancient [3] city in the south [4] of France. 2. Women, children, old men — all [5] were massacred. 3. What a noise you are making, children! 4. My father is a lawyer. 5. Victor Hugo was buried in the [6] Pantheon, an honor which he well [3] deserved.[7] 6. O passions! you who have caused so many [8] evils, I dread you more than death. 7. A gentle [9] rain quiets a great wind (Proverb). 8. A rolling [10] stone gathers no [8] moss (Proverb). 9. Prayers, tears — nothing has any effect [11] on a hard [3] heart. 10. His father is an Englishman, and his mother is an Italian. 11. The church of [12] Saint Mark, in [2] Venice, surpasses in splendor, in color, in richness of mosaic, anything that one [13] can imagine. 12. He has always received me [14] with kindness. 13. You run the risk [15] of being [16] ill treated. 14. Your friend always [3] has a [12] good appetite. 15. Why are you thus without money, without friends? 16. Your conduct has given [15] me pleasure. 17. I depend [15] upon your friendship.

[1] *est.* [2] 'at,' 'to,' or 'in' must be translated by *à* before names of cities. [3] place after the word modified. [4] *du Midi.* [5] *tout;* predicate must agree in the singular. [6] *a été inhumé au.* [7] imperfect. [8] *de* or the contracted article? [9] *petite.* [10] change participial adjective to relative clause, and place after the noun. [11] *n'a d'empire.* [12] omit this word. [13] *tout ce que l'on.* [14] before or after the verb? [15] see list of idiomatic verbs under rules. [16] the infinitive is used after all prepositions except *en*, which requires the present participle.

4. PLURAL OF NOUNS.

Review rules and exceptions for the formation of *Plural of Nouns.*

Exercise 4.

1. God has given [1] wool to the lambs, fur [9] to the wild [2] beasts, and feathers to birds. 2. Owls are night [3] birds that have round eyes.[4] 3. Two pupils may be [5] rivals in their [6]

studies, and friends during[7] their recreations. 4. The museums of the Louvre contain[1] beautiful enamels. 5. The balls of the opera in Paris have a great reputation. 6. Bolts can not bar out[8] thought. 7. There are[1] blues of different shades. 8. Men fear death which ends all their evils. 9. The hair[9] is[9] the ornament of the head. 10. The French are the rivals rather than the enemies of the English. 11. The knees are flexible like[1] springs. 12. Iron is the most useful of[10] minerals; wheat, the most useful of vegetables; and the horse, the most useful of animals. 13. Nature purifies water[9] by the fire[9] of volcanoes. 14 There are plants which grow[11] between[12] pebbles. 15. The roots of trees resemble[13] little tubes. 16. The rich[9] drive[14] in elegant landaus. 17. My house is surrounded with[15] cabbages and lettuce.[9] 18. The most beautiful jewels of a mother are her children. 19. Of all the ancient carnivals, that[16] of Venice was[17] the most brilliant. 20. One sees few[18] well formed noses and necks.[19]

[1] insert 'some.' [2] place after noun, and translate by *fauves*. [3] 'some birds of night.' [4] 'the eyes round.' [5] *peuvent être*. [6] *les*. [7] *dans*. [8] 'bar out' = *arrêter*. [9] put in the plural. [10] 'of the.' [11] *naissent*. [12] insert *les*. [13] *ressemblent à de*. [14] *se promènent en*. [15] translate 'with' by *de* before both nouns. [16] use the demonstrative pronoun *celui*. [17] imperfect. [18] use *de* before both nouns. [19] 'noses and necks well made.'

Exercise 5.

Translate the following phrases and sentences, first in the *singular* and then in the *plural*:—

1. My sister is my friend and my companion. 2. The horse is the friend of the Arab. 3. This general is a hero. 4. The wall of my garden. 5. The inhabitant of this country. 6. The arm raised toward the sky. 7. The price of this coral. 8. The pupil of the eye. 9. The boat on the canal. 10. The discourse of this orator. 11. The child in his cradle. 12. The plaything of the child. 13. The blade of this knife. 14. The hole of the mouse.

5. FEMININE AND PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES.

Review rules and exceptions for the formation of the *feminine* and *plural* of *adjectives*. The pupil will understand that most of the nouns modified are of the feminine gender; the position of the adjectives is the same in French as in English, unless otherwise indicated in the notes.

Exercise 6.

1. The forests of[1] America are as old as the world. 2. A bad action renders the conscience uneasy. 3. Joy is deeper when it is shared[2] with[3] friends. 4. The language of the heart is the universal[4] language. 5. A secret[4] joy is rarely[5] a perfect[6] joy. 6. My dear mother, I shall be docile, attentive, studious, loving, and obedient, in order that[7] you may always[4] be[8] satisfied with[9] your little girl. 7. The forget-me-not is a sweet[10] flower. 8. The negroes have thick lips.[11] 9. Commerce is a useful[4] and lucrative[4] profession. 10. His answer is brief, but it is expressive. 11. This law is very ancient. 12. A sweet[4] face is a good recommendation. 13. The bearing of the Arabs is grave and proud. 14. A dissipated[4] life leads to[12] total[6] ruin. 15. The life of the mariner is a dangerous[4] life. 16. The tongue is the best and the worst of[13] things. 17. Pure[14] religion is gentle, tolerant, and conciliatory. 18. The Greek[4] language is beautiful, rich, and harmonious. 19. The old Gothic[4] churches are admirable. 20. High mountains are covered[2] with[9] eternal[4] snows.

[1] no article before 'America.' [2] participles conjugated with *être* must agree with the subject. [3] insert 'some.' [4] place after word modified. [5] *n'est presque jamais.* [6] *complet;* see note 4. [7] *afin que.* [8] subjunctive present. [9] *de.* [10] *gentil,* irr. [11] 'have the lips thick.' [12] insert *une.* [13] insert definite article. [14] *vrai.*

Exercise 7 (Same Subject).

1. Raw[1] silk is white or yellow. 2. Red[1] partridges are larger and better than gray[1] partridges. 3. Public[1] education

is superior to private[1] education. 4. Fortune is fickle; its favors are fugitive and deceitful. 5. I often[1] meet[2] new[1] words, but[3] rarely a new[1] idea. 6. Women are coquettish when they are beautiful, and scolds[4] when they are good.[5] 7. The vowels are long or short. 8. His thought is always ambiguous. 9. Beautiful[6] blue[1] eyes seem to reflect the color of the sky. 10. Often an old error has been proclaimed as a new[1] truth. 11. I do not like sulky[1] little girls. 12. This is[7] a foolish adventure. 13. The most odious[8] ingratitude is that of a[9] child toward his parents. 14. This writing is neat and regular. 15. Man is endowed with[10] a progressive[1] nature. 16. Everybody likes polite[11] manners, gentle looks, and affectionate words. 17. This young girl has[11] rosy cheeks and a pretty[12] mouth. 18. Good deeds make[13] life happy. 19. Personal[1] liberty is the first condition of human[1] existence. 20. Switzerland is mountainous and picturesque.

[1] place after word modified. [2] insert 'some.' [3] omit this word. [4] *grondeuses.* [5] *sages.* [6] must be preceded by *de.* [7] *voilà.* [8] 'the ingratitude the most odious.' [9] use definite article. [10] *de* [11] in this sentence, put *les* before all nouns, and all the adjectives after the nouns: for word order, see note 11 of Exercise 6. [12] *mignon*, irr. [13] *rendre.*

6. CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Review the forms of personal pronouns as *subject, direct, indirect,* or *reflexive object,* and their position before the verb.

Remark. — When the verb is in a compound tense, remember to place the object pronoun *before* the auxiliary, not *between* the auxiliary and past participle.

Exercise 8.

1. The laws protect him. 2. Fortune[1] has betrayed you. 3. Victory will not[2] abandon us. 4. I should not have recommended[3] her. 5. The beauty of the sky has always[4] enchanted me. 6. Riches dazzle us. 7. The truth ought[5] not to offend them 8. Every one[6] looks for happiness, and no one[7] finds

it. 9. My counsels will guide you. 10. Time and reflection will enlighten you. 11. I have brought her[8] a bouquet. 12. He bores me very[9] much. 13. I shall speak to him in private. 14. This idea torments him. 15. Some one is listening to us. 16. How do you like[10] this book? I think it charming. 17. Do you speak to him? to her? to them? 18. Treacherous[11] friends have betrayed him. 19. Thy passions blind thee. 20. His[12] ambition will ruin him. 21. The hope of succeeding[13] gives them confidence. 22. I will go to see her to-morrow morning.

[1] remember that abstract nouns require definite article. [2] place *ne* immediately after the subject, so as to allow the object pronoun to precede the verb. [3] use past conditional. [4] when adverbs of time modify verbs used in compound tenses, they are placed, as in English, *between* the auxiliary and past participle. [5] *devrait;* here, as usual, this verb governs the infinitive. [6] *chacun.* [7] *nul ne;* both precede the verb, and *pas* is omitted. [8] the sense is not 'her,' but 'to her'; hence, use the indirect form of the pronoun. [9] never translate 'very' before 'much.' [10] such verbs as 'like,' 'think,' used in the sense of 'to have an opinion of,' are translated by *trouver.* [11] adjective follows noun. [12] *son*, because *ambition* begins with a vowel. [13] infinitive.

a. Two Personal Pronoun Objects before the Verb in Declarative, Interrogative, and Negative Sentences.

Review rules for their position, relatively to the verb and to each other.

Remark. — Great attention must be given in this exercise to *word order;* remember that the *negative* or *interrogative* forms of sentences do not affect the *position* of object pronouns before the verb; see also the remark for Exercise 8.

Exercise 9.

1. Have you bought my books? Can you send them to me? 2. My brother has lent me this beautiful book; he[1] has not given it to me; he has only lent it to me. 3. Have you told him[2] that I am here? Yes, I have.[3] 4. Have you told[4] your sister that I found[5] her book? No, I have not.[3] 5. Why

have you not told her?[6] 6. Because I have entirely forgotten it. I will tell[7] her directly. 7. Where are my gloves? Here they are[8] on the table. 8. Why did you not bring[9] them to me? 9. I have asked you to lend me a book. 10. You have not yet sent it to me. When are you going to send it to me? 11. I should like very much to[10] send it to you; but I have already lent it. 12. I should like very much to[10] read it when you can[11] lend it to me. 13. Here is a book for your sister. Will[12] you give it to her? 14. Why do you not give it to her yourself?[13] 15. She has brought him a present. Has she not given it to him? 16. I shall show it to you. 17. You have promised it to them. 18. She will send it to us. 19. We shall tell it to him. 20. You have borrowed my dictionary; can you return it to me? 21. I shall send it to you right away, if you wish.

[1] translate the whole sentence in following order: 'he (*ne*) to me it has not given; he to me it has only lent.' [2] see note 8 under Exercise 8. [3] this unfinished sentence must be translated thus: 'yes, I it to him have told.' [4] insert *à*. [5] use past indefinite. [6] construe: 'why (*ne*) it to her have you not told?' [7] insert 'it.' [8] *les voici*. [9] for tense, see note 5; for word order, see note 6. [10] *je voudrais bien*; no preposition precedes following infinitive. [11] future of *pouvoir*. [12] 'will,' in the sense of 'wishing,' 'wanting,' is translated by *vouloir*. [13] construe: 'why (*ne*) it to her give you not yourself?'

b. Personal Pronoun Objects of Verbs in the Imperative Mood.

Review rule for the position and forms of personal pronouns used as objects of verbs in the *negative* and *affirmative* forms of the *imperative mood*.

Remark. — Observe that when the imperative is in the *affirmative*, the word order is exactly the same in both French and English; when it is *negative*, the French order is observed.

Exercise 10.

1. Let me hear[1] from you soon. 2. Who wants this pretty flower? Give it to me; don't give it to him.[2] 3. Give it to

us; don't give it to them.[3] 4. If you still[4] have your brother's book, lend it to me, and I shall return it to you to-morrow. 5. I shall send it to you, but do not tell it to him.[3] 6. Have you forgotten to send those letters to the Post Office? 7. Don't forget to send them[5] to-morrow morning. 8. Bring him[6] a glass, or rather bring it to me. 9. Don't bring me any coffee. 10. Give her[6] the book, but don't show her[6] the letter. 11. Wait[7] for me at the foot[8] of the stairs 12. Don't make me wait[9] very long. 13. Don't look[7] at me while I do this. 14. This horse is wild; don't ride him. 15. This lady has done[10] you a service; thank her politely. 16. Do not interrupt me; answer me or not[11] as you like.[12] 17. Do not leave me thus; look at me squarely[13] and finish what[14] you have to[15] say. 18. Choose your friends well;[4] render them[6] every[16] possible service. 19. Let us return to them good[17] for evil; let us not return[18] evil for evil. 20. My son, listen[7] to me well; do not force me to[15] be too severe toward you.[19]

[1] 'give me soon of your news.' [2] construe: '(*ne*) it to him give not (*pas*).' [3] same word order as in note 2. [4] place after the verb. [5] insert *y*, standing for the adverbial phrase, 'to the Post Office.' [6] use indirect form of pronoun. [7] corresponding French verb is transitive and takes no preposition after it. [8] *au bas*. [9] construe: '(*ne*) me make not wait,' etc. [10] *rendre*, followed immediately by *service*. [11] repeat verb and object pronoun. [12] *le jugerez bon*. [13] *bien en face*. [14] that which. [15] *à*. [16] *tous les; rendre* here requires the article because *service* is followed by an adjective. [17] here a noun, and, like 'evil,' requires the definite article. [18] add 'to them.' [19] *à votre égard*.

c. Personal Pronoun Objects of Reflexive Verbs in the Imperative Mood.

Remark. — It should be remembered that one of the two pronouns used in reflexive verbs is retained in the imperative; this pronoun is the *object*, not the *subject* of the verb; in the affirmative, it follows the verb; in the negative, it precedes. The pupil would do well to recite, in the negative and interrogative, the imperative of following reflexive verbs before writing the exercise.

Exercise 11.

1. Let[1] us not tire ourselves too much. Let us rest a moment.[2] 2. Let us not hurry uselessly. 3. Let us not rejoice in[3] advance over[3] a success which is not yet assured. 4. Let us not boast of a thing which is not yet done.[4] 5. Let us excuse ourselves politely when we disturb some one. 6. Let us not make fun of the unhappy.[5] 7. You have had[6] a very hard[7] journey in[8] the rain and wind. 8. Change your clothes[9] first and dry yourself well. 9. Then, after a good supper, go to bed and rest well. 10. Dress yourself[10] quickly; wash your[11] hands, face, and neck. 11. Get up early. Apply yourself[12] to study. 12. Don't stop on the way, when you are going to school.

[1] 'let,' found in the first person plural of the imperative mood, is not translated into French. [2] *instant*, m. [3] *de*. [4] must agree with subject of the verb. [5] put in the plural. [6] use *faire*. [7] *bien pénible;* place after the noun. [8] *par*. [9] make verb reflexive, and omit 'your clothes.' [10] put in the second person singular. [11] make verb reflexive and put definite article before nouns. [12] insert *bien*.

d. En, Y, Le.

Review rules for the use and position of these pronouns.

The following remarks should be noted by the student: —

1. **En** is a compound of **de** and **a noun** or **pronoun**. It may have a genitive sense, meaning *of him, of her, of it, of them*, and sometimes, *from him, from her, from it*, etc.; or, a partitive sense, standing for *some* or *any*. Compare this double meaning of **en** with the possessive and partitive meanings of the contracted articles **du, de la, des.** Both have the same functions, the articles corresponding to the possessive forms *of the*, and *'s*, or to the indefinite adjective *some* or *any;* while **en** corresponds to the possessive or genitive case *of him, of her*, etc., or to the indefinite pronoun *some* or *any*.

It should be observed that many French verbs require the preposition **de** where the English equivalent governs *with*, *about*, etc., or *no preposition at all.* In all such cases, the pronoun object of the verb is always **en** in French. In speaking of persons, **en** is less frequently met than **de lui, d'elle, d'eux,** etc.; whereas **en** is the only proper word to use in speaking of things. **En**, as an adverb, stands for *from that place*, *from there*, *away*. **En** is also a preposition meaning *in*.

2. **Y** is a compound of **à** and **a noun** or **pronoun**. As a personal pronoun, it is a dative meaning *to him*, *to her*, *to it*, *to them*. Compare this meaning of **y** with that of the contracted articles **au, à la, aux,** etc. The resemblance between their nature and uses is the counterpart of that between **du, de la, des,** and **en**. Also notice that **y**, like **en**, is less used for persons than things. Many French verbs require **à** where the corresponding English verb governs *in*, *of*, etc., or *no preposition at all.* In all such cases, the indirect object pronoun **y** must be used with the French verb.

When **y** stands for *to that place*, *thither*, *there*, it is treated as an adverb.

3. The invariable pronoun **le** should not be confused with **le, la, les.** The former does not represent a person or thing, but either an *idea* expressed in some preceding sentence, or *a state*, *condition*, or *quality*, previously expressed by some adjective or participle; this accounts for its invariable form.

Exercise 12.

1. I have a few French books; I have six or seven. Have you more? 2. Our French professor[1] has a large number of them in his library. 3. Few boys play[2] the piano. Most young girls play it. 4. People[3] often[4] give us good advice,[5] but we do not profit[6] by it. 5. This young man is wise; he earns much money and he[7] spends only a part of it. 6. I do not stay in[8] the city in[9] the hot[4] season; I live there only in[10]

winter. 7. All boys play[2] ball. Henry plays almost all the time. 8. In a grate, we[3] usually[4] burn coal; we burn wood in[11] it, too. 9. Here is a good omelet; you have tasted of[8] it, but you have not eaten it.[12] Aren't you hungry? 10. Your proposition is reasonable; I give my consent to it. 11. You have a stick; use[13] it. 12. She has written that, and I think that she will repent[6] it. 13. What do you say[6] about it? 14. I will not tell[6] you anything about it. 15. This chicken is very tender; will you have some of it? 16. How do you like these gloves? I bought[14] a dozen pairs in Paris. 17. Are you the person who came[14] the other day? Yes, I am.[15] 18. Gentlemen, are you the[16] heirs of the deceased? We are.[15] 19. If I have succeeded, it[17] is to your protection that I owe it.

[1] 'professor of French.' [2] when this verb refers to a musical instrument, it governs *de;* when it refers to a game, it takes *à*. [3] *on*. [4] place after word modified. [5] put in the plural. [6] this verb governs *de*. [7] construe: 'he (*ne*) of it spend only (= *que*) a part.' [8] *à*. [9] *pendant*. [10] omit this word and replace it by the definite article. [11] 'one in (= *à*) it burns also some wood.' [12] 'of it'; place before verb. [13] 'serve yourself of it.' [14] past indefinite. [15] this and all similar sentences must be completed by the insertion of *le, la, les,* or *le* according to what they represent; see remark (3) under *En, Y, Le*. [16] omit this word; 'heirs' is here used adjectively. [17] *ce*.

Exercise 13 (Same Subject).

1. Madam, are you the mother of that charming child? Yes, sir, I am.[1] 2. Are you a[2] mother? No, I am not.[1] 3. Are you the bride and groom?[3] We are.[1] 4. Are you[4] married? We are[1] not. 5. This great crime was[5] useless, as crimes always[6] are.[1] 6. Men love riches and honors; they aspire to them all their lives.[7] 7. The man gifted[8] with great talents almost always abuses[9] them. 8. You have rendered me a[10] service, and I[11] am grateful[8] for it. 9. Force is brutal; man must[12] not abuse it. 10. My exercise is done; I have devoted a great deal of time to it. 11. I am pleased[8] with it;

I do not find any more mistakes in[13] it. 12. The[14] more I study sciences, the more difficulties I find in them. 13. Eloquence is a gift of nature, but art adds perfection to it. 14. Wit is the flower of imagination; judgment is its[15] fruit.

[1] see note 15 under preceding exercise. [2] see note 16 under preceding exercise. [3] *les mariés.* [4] 'you' stands here for more than one, hence agreement in the plural of past participle. [5] past definite. [6] place after word modified. [7] singular. [8] this adjective governs *de.* [9] this verb governs *de.* [10] omit this word. [11] insert 'to you.' [12] use *devoir.* [13] *à.* [14] construe thus: 'more I study the sciences, more I in them (= *y*) discover some (= *de*) difficulties.' [15] 'of it is the fruit.'

e. Direct and Indirect Object Pronouns combined with 'En' and 'Y' after Verbs in the Imperative Mood.

Remark. — In the following exercise, only affirmative forms of the imperative verbs are given; the pupil will remember that in such sentences the direct object in French, as in English, precedes the indirect. When, however, the indirect object is **nous** or **vous**, in familiar language these pronouns precede the direct **le, la, les,** thus: "Si le dîner est prêt, servez-**nous**-le." The best grammatical usage, however, requires one to say, "servez-le-**nous**."

Exercise 14.

1. I have not yet seen the "Jardin des Plantes"; take[1] me[2] there when you go[3] there for a walk.[4] 2. What do you feel? Tell[5] me; speak without disguise.[6] 3. Go get the books that were given[7] to you and show them to us. 4. Since you know the lesson that your teacher has told you to learn, recite it to us. 5. You go very often to the theatre; take[1] us there next[8] Saturday. 6. When you have[3] news of your brother, let us know.[9] 7. Take some cotton and put[10] some in your[11] ear. 8. Take some cold[8] ashes and put[12] some on the cut. 9. If any one renders you a service, pay it back[13] to him in[14] gratitude. 10. If you still have[15] any pens of this make, sell me a box of them.[16] 11. When you go[3] out, tell me so.[17] 12. This

fable is very pretty; recite it for[18] us. 13. Work is the source of happiness; devote yourself to it with zeal. 14. You cannot go to London yourself; send me[19] in your place. 15. You have my hat; give it back to me. 16. This ink is too thick; put[20] some water in it.

[1] 'take,' in the sense of 'conducting' a person or animal, is translated by *conduire* or *mener;* in the sense of 'carrying' something, it is translated by *porter*. [2] when, in the imperative affirmative, *moi* and *toi* precede *en* or *y*, they change, for the sake of euphony, to *m'* and *t'*. [3] a present tense in English, implying future action, must be translated by a future in French. [4] 'for a walk' = *vous y promener*. [5] insert *le*. [6] use infinitive of verb. [7] use active voice, thus: 'that one to you has given.' [8] place after noun. [9] construe: 'make us them to know.' [10] make this verb reflexive; place 'some' after it as in English. [11] change to the definite article. [12] *s'appliquer*. [13] omit this word. [14] *par la*. [15] *s'il vous reste encore*. [16] say, 'of them a box.' [17] replace this word by *le*. [18] *à*. [19] insert 'there' and change the preposition 'in' to *à*. [20] 'put in (= *à*) it some water.'

7. DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The disjunctive forms of personal pronouns are used:—

1. When the verb is absent or understood. Ex.: Qui frappe? **Moi** = *who knocks? I.* Il est plus grand que **moi** = *he is taller than I.*
2. After the verb **être**: c'est **toi**, c'est **lui**, etc. = *it is thou, it is he.*
3. In compound subjects or objects composed of two pronouns, or nouns and pronouns: Marie et **moi**, nous irons vous voir = *Mary and I will go to see you.*
4. When the subject pronoun is separated from the verb: **eux** qui sont mes amis, me conseilleront = *they who are my friends will advise me.*
5. For emphasis, with another pronoun of the same person: **toi**, tu n'aimes pas le café; **moi**, je l'aime = *you don't like coffee; I do.*
6. The disjunctives are especially used as objects of prepositions: venez avec **moi** = *come with me.*

For **moi, toi**, etc., used in the imperative mood, see exercise on *Pronouns as Objects of Verbs in the Imperative*, page 12.

The disjunctive forms of personal pronouns combine with the word **même, mêmes** to form the compound personal pronouns *myself, thysely* etc. They are used chiefly for emphasis.

Exercise 15.

1. You ask who did[1] that? It[2] was[3] I. 2. My brother is handsomer than I, but I am taller than he. 3. I, who have written it,[4] ought[5] to know what it is.[6] 4. All the family had promised[7] to come, but he alone was[8] present. 5. He deceives me[9] who am his friend. 6. I will reward them[9] and their families.[10] 7. She says that she has lost her book; you and I will look for it. 8. I assure you that it[2] is not he who has revealed this secret. 9. You read very well, and yet you will[11] not read before me. 10. If you are going to[12] Europe, why do you not start with me? 11. Every one has his preference; you love music, he[13] loves painting. 12. If your sisters can not accompany you, come without them. 13. I am a[14] slave, — I who was[3] born to[15] command. 14. He hates us,[9] who have given him so many proofs of friendship. 15. I will speak to him myself. 16. Your father and I[16] have only one[17] desire, namely,[18] your happiness. 17. I[13] will teach you to respect your parents! 18. Who accuses this man, — he or you? 19. I will tell him myself the cause of his misfortunes. 20. Your father and he have long[19] been enemies.[20]

[1] past indefinite. [2] *ce*. [3] present tense. [4] repeat 'I' before 'ought.' [5] conditional present of *devoir*. [6] *ce que c'est*. [7] pluperfect. [8] imperfect. [9] because this pronoun is emphatic, it must be expressed twice in French, — once as a conjunctive before the verb, and again as a disjunctive after the verb. [10] *les leurs*. [11] use *vouloir*, because 'will' here stands for 'to be willing.' [12] before names of countries or continents, 'to' is translated by *en*, and the definite article is omitted. [13] see rule 5. [14] omit this word. [15] before infinitives, 'to' used in the sense of 'in order to,' 'for the purpose of,' must always be translated by *pour*. [16] insert *nous*, because the subjects are of different persons. [17] *ne . . . qu'un seul*. [18] *c'est*. [19] 'long' is here an adverb; use *longtemps*, and place after participle. [20] add *l'un de l'autre*.

8. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	Masc.	*Fem.*		*Masc.*	*Fem.*
mine:	**le mien**	**la mienne**	mine:	**les miens**	**les miennes**
thine:	**le tien**	**la tienne**	thine:	**les tiens**	**les tiennes**
his, hers, its:	**le sien**	**la sienne**	his, hers, its:	**les siens**	**les siennes**
ours:	**le nôtre**	**la nôtre**	ours:	**les nôtres**	**les nôtres**
yours:	**le vôtre**	**la vôtre**	yours:	**les vôtres**	**les vôtres**
theirs:	**le leur**	**la leur**	theirs:	**les leurs**	**les leurs**

These pronouns agree in gender and number with the nouns for which they stand; their use should not be confused with that of the adjectives **mon, ton, son,** etc., which always accompany the noun. When 'of' and 'to' precede the English pronouns 'mine,' 'his,' 'yours,' etc., the French prepositions **de** and **à** contract with the articles standing before the pronouns, excepting in the case of the feminine singular form; thus, **du mien, au mien, des miennes, aux vôtres,** etc.

Le mien, le tien, etc., are used for 'mine,' 'thine,' etc. But in such expressions as 'is mine,' meaning 'belongs to me,' **à moi, à toi,** are just as commonly used. Ex.: **à qui** sont ces gants? Ils sont **à moi** = *whose gloves are these? They are mine.*

The English phrases 'a friend of mine,' 'a cousin of yours,' cannot be rendered literally in French; translate thus: **un de mes amis, une de vos cousines.**

Les miens, les tiens, les vôtres, etc., are sometimes used in French to designate one's immediate family or nearest relatives. Ex.: je suis tout dévoué **aux miens** = *I am entirely devoted to my family.*

Exercise 16.

1. We love our children as you love yours. 2. The productions of nature are varied; every country has its own.[1] 3. Your confidence deserves mine. 4. Great men are rare; yet, all civilized[2] nations have theirs. 5. The ancients have

their masterpieces[3]; we have ours. 6. Your pupils have been surpassed[4] by several of ours. 7. I have always sacrificed my interests to hers.[5] 8. It was[6] a friend of yours who announced[7] the good news[8] to me. 9. Your garden touches[9] mine. 10. The troubles of our friends are our own.[10] 11. He has accepted my services, and now[11] he refuses me his. 12. Every one has his lot; work is hers.[5] 13. I have received your letter, dated[12] the fifth[13] of February; have you received mine? 14. The ancient[14] orators excelled[15] ours. 15. Your friends are esteemed[4] by[16] mine. 16. You have your peculiarities; who has not his? 17. The hypocrite flatters our vices in order that we may approve[17] of his. 18. The English navy is superior to ours.

[1] 'its own' must be translated by third person feminine plural form of possessive pronoun. [2] participial adjectives agree with their nouns, and usually follow. [3] in compound nouns, made up of two nouns connected by a preposition, the first noun only, as a rule, takes the mark of the plural.* [4] must agree with subject of the verb. [5] agrees with 'interests,' not with the gender of person spoken of. [6] present tense. [7] *m'a fait part de.* [8] singular. [9] insert *à*. [10] 'ours.' [11] *voici qu'*. [12] *en date du.* [13] use cardinal numeral, omit preposition and write 'February' with small letter. [14] after the noun. [15] *l'emportent sur.* [16] 'by,' after verbs of feeling, is usually translated by *de*. [17] *applaudir à*

9. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Celui (masc. sing.), **celle** (fem. sing.) = that, that of, the one.
Celui qui, celle qui = he who, she who, the one who *or* which.
Ceux (masc. pl.) **celles** (fem. pl.) = those, those of, the ones.
Ceux qui, celles qui = they who, those who, the ones who *or* which.

These forms of the demonstrative pronoun stand for some *definite* person or object. They frequently express the possessive case of the nouns for which they stand, and thus correspond

* The recent ministerial decree states that such compound nouns may be written without the hyphen, and that their component parts, as regards the formation of their plural, may be governed by the ordinary laws of syntax. Ex.: *un chef d'œuvre, des chefs d'œuvre.*

to the *'s* in English. Ex.: j'ai entendu votre voix et **celle** de votre sœur = *I heard your voice and your sister's.*

They also frequently add a limiting or descriptive sense to the noun for which they stand. In such cases, the pronouns are followed by some adjective phrase or relative clause. Ex.: vous admirez la robe de soie, et moi, **celle de velours**; je crains **ceux qui ne craignent pas Dieu**; cette rose est **celle que je préfère.** When the sense of **celui, celle, ceux, celles,** is thus already limited by the addition of a possessive or descriptive phrase or clause, they cannot be followed by **-ci** or **-là.**

Exercise 17.

1. Your brother's library is large,[1] but my father's[2] is better[3] selected. 2. That man has spent his fortune and that of his wife. 3. My cows give more milk than those of my neighbor. 4. This dress is better[3] made[4] than your sister's.[2] 5. The faults of Peter the Great were[5] those of a soldier, and his virtues those of a great man. 6. The books that you sent[6] me are not those that I bought.[6] 7. The one who is mistaken does not like to admit[7] his[8] error. 8. The climate of[9] Europe is temperate; that of[9] Africa is torrid. 9. The comedies of Molière are superior to those of Terence. 10. The eloquence of Cicero is not comparable to that of Demosthenes. 11. Those who love danger will perish in[10] it. 12. This man is the one who struck[11] me. 13. Cotton[12] sheets are less expensive than linen ones.[13] 14. I admire the exploits of Bayard, but I admire[14] still more those of Turenne.

[1] *nombreuse.* [2] 'that of my father.' [3] 'better' is here an adverb; must it be rendered by *mieux* or *meilleur?* [4] apply rule for agreement of participles conjugated with *être.* [5] imperfect. [6] put verb in past indefinite; apply rule for agreement of participles conjugated with *avoir.* [7] *reconnaître.* [8] *son* or *sa?* [9] insert definite article. [10] *à.* [11] past indefinite. [12] 'the sheets of cotton.' [13] 'those of.' [14] 'admire still more' = *j'estime davantage.*

Celui-ci	(masc. sing.)	= this one	**celui-là**	(masc. sing.)	= that one.
Celle-ci	(fem. sing.)	= this one	**celle-là**	(fem. sing.)	= that one.
Ceux-ci	(masc. pl.)	= these	**ceux-là**	(masc. pl.)	= those.
Celles-ci	(fem. pl.)	= these	**celles-là**	(fem. pl.)	= those.

These pronouns, like the first forms given, are used to represent persons or things previously mentioned in the sentence; they stand for something known and have a definite antecedent. Their inflections for gender and number prove this fact. **Celui-ci, celle-ci, celui-là, celle-là,** etc., are used only to bring out the contrast between things compared, replacing the emphasis given in English by the two distinct forms *this* and *that*, lacking in French. Ex.: *this one is white, that one is black* = **celui-ci** est blanc, **celui-là** est noir.

These emphatic forms of the pronoun also translate the words *former* and *latter;* **celui-là, celle-là, ceux-là, celles-là** standing for *the former;* **celui-ci, celle-ci, ceux-ci, celles-ci,** for *the latter.*

Exercise 18.

1. Look at[1] these beautiful roses! This one is budding, that one is in full bloom.[2] 2. You have given me my[3] choice of these books; I will take these for my brother and those for myself.[4] 3. This diamond[5] is more brilliant[6] than that one. 4. What a difference between these two brothers! The[7] one is ignorant, the other[8] is well educated. 5. Bossuet and Fénelon are eloquent; the latter is fascinating; the former is persuasive. 6. I know[9] these two men; I despise the one,[7] and fear the other.[8] 7. I have brought two cushions; which one will you have,[10] this one or that one? 8. This one is too large and that one is too hard. 9. Here are several hats; try on this one. 10. This one is not becoming to me[11]; I will take that one. 11. The rose and the tulip are two lovely[12] flowers, but the latter is without fragrance, while[13] the former exhales a delicious fragrance.

[1] *voyez.* [2] *tout épanouie.* [3] *le.* [4] *moi.* [5] add *-ci.* [6] *a plus de feu.* [7] 'this one.' [8] 'that one.' [9] *savoir* or *connaître?* [10] *voulez-vous?* [11] *ne me sied pas.* [12] *charmantes;* place after the noun. [13] *et.*

Ceci = this. **Cela** = that.

These pronouns have no inflections for gender and number because, unlike **celui, celle,** etc., they never stand for any person or thing previously mentioned in the sentence. They either refer to *something pointed to* by the speaker, literally or figuratively, as: avez-vous lu **cela**? or, they represent *a clause, phrase,* or *idea just expressed* or *about to be,* as: vous le demandez et **cela** est impossible = *you ask it and it is impossible.*

Exercise 19.

1. Have you learned this? Yes, but I have not learned that. 2. That is a very great misfortune. 3. Have you copied all this and all that? 4. I have finished this, but I have not quite[1] finished that. 5. Did you see[2] that? Where did you find[2] this? 6. That is not easy to explain. 7. This is a family relic.[3] 8. This will cost you much more than that. 9. You assure me that[4] he is my friend; that is quite[5] possible. 10. That is an invention of his enemies. 11. That is a very pretty compliment. 12. You desire that I should be[6] his friend, but that is impossible. 13. Don't forget to send me this. 14. Read this and tell me what[7] you think[8] of it. 15. Pride is a great fault, remember[9] that. 16. My dear children, understand[10] this: work is a treasure. 17. If you are selfish, you will never[11] have any[12] friends, remember that.

[1] *tout-à-fait;* place as in English between auxiliary and participle. [2] past indefinite. [3] 'relic of family.' [4] here a conjunction; translate by *que.* [5] *fort.* [6] this verb depends on *désirer,* a verb of sentiment; translate by subjunctive present of *être.* [7] *ce que.* [8] *penser* here takes *de,* not *à,* because the verb means 'to have an opinion of.' [9] *retenez bien.* [10] *écoutez bien.* [11] place after verb. [12] *de.*

10. WHEN TO USE 'CE,' WHEN 'IL,' BEFORE 'ÊTRE.'

The pronouns *he, she, it, they, this, that, these, those,* are translated by **ce** or **c'** before **être**, when these words are representative subjects and serve to introduce the real, logical subject which, in such cases, follows the verb.

Examples: *he is my friend* = c'est mon ami; *she is her cousin* = c'est sa cousine; *it is your hat* = c'est votre chapeau; *they* or *these are not my gloves* = ce ne sont pas mes gants; *it is he* = c'est lui; *those are mine* = ce sont les miens; *it is that one* = c'est celui-là; *seeing is believing* = voir c'est croire; *will you come?* = est-ce que vous viendrez? *it is here* = c'est ici; *that is enough* = c'est assez; *to-day is Monday* = c'est aujourd'hui lundi; *to-morrow is the fourth* = ce sera demain le quatre.

Rule I. — Translate *he, she, it, they, this, that, these, those,* by **ce** or **c'** before **être**, when this verb is followed by a *noun, pronoun, infinitive, noun clause, adverb of place* or *quantity,* or *date idiom.*

Exception. — *He, she, it* are translated by **il, elle, ils, elles** before **être** followed by a predicate noun, when the English pronouns are emphatic, or when a certain shade of feeling enters into the statement. Ex.: *he is your father* = il est votre père.

Rule II. — When *he, she, it, they* are the real, logical subjects of the verb, standing for definite and expressed antecedents, they are translated before **être** by **il, elle, ils, elles.** The verb, in this case, is followed by an *adjective* or *attribute,* an *adjective phrase* or *clause.*

For **ce** + **qui** or **que** standing for *what,* see chapter on *Relative Pronouns,* page 31.

Exception. — **Ce** is found before **être**, followed by an *adjective,* in only one case, namely when **ce** means **cela**, and can be changed to **cela** without altering the sense. In this case, **ce**, like **cela**, refers to *something pointed to,* or to *an antecedent understood but not expressed.* Ex.: Comment trouvez-vous cela? c'est magnifique, *or*

cela est magnifique. When used parenthetically, both **il** and **ce** are used with the clause 'it is true' = *il est vrai.*

Il translates *it* and also *there* in all impersonal constructions: *it is time to start* = il est temps de partir; *there came a man to our village* = il vint un homme, etc.

Il is also used as *subject* of all *real impersonal verbs: it seems, it rains, it matters* = il semble, il pleut, il importe, etc. When the verb is *not a true impersonal*, **cela** is used: *it hurts me to see you this way* = **cela** me fait de la peine de vous voir ainsi.

Exercise 20.

1. It is hope that sustains man in adversity.[1] 2. It is your friendship that I prize. 3. Here is the book that I found;[2] it is your sister's. 4. No, it is not hers, it is mine. 5. The counsel is good, but it is not new. 6. It is a misfortune[3] not to have[4] any friends. 7. It is your sister who deserves[5] praise. 8. It is in adversity that one recognizes the true[6] friend. 9. It was[7] your aunt whom I met[8] in Europe. 10. It is ambition which causes the ruin of so many men. 11. It is to God that we owe all the blessings[9] which[10] we enjoy. 12. It was[11] the Egyptians who invented[2] arithmetic. 13. The principal quality which distinguishes the French[12] language[13] is clearness. 14. It is you whom I desire[14] to see. 15. It is the one or the other of these two men who betrayed[2] the secret. 16. It often happens[15] that vice spoils the happiest disposition.[16] 17. It takes[17] great courage to[18] stand injustice. 18. It is virtue that makes heroes. 19. It is beautiful to die for one's[19] country. 20. We must[20] work when we[21] are young. 21. It is we[11] who make[22] ourselves unhappy. 22. It is friendship that makes all the charms[23] of life.

[1] *au milieu des revers.* [2] past indefinite. [3] place *de* after this word. [4] place both negatives (*ne point*) before infinitive. [5] insert 'some' and put noun in the plural. [6] *véritable;* place after noun. [7] present. [8] past indefinite of *connaître.* [9] *avantage*, m. pl. [10] 'of which' (*dont*, because *jouir* takes *de.* [11] put this verb in the present; when *être* is

preceded by *ce* and followed by a plural noun or a pronoun of the third person, the verb becomes plural,* but it remains singular if the pronoun is of the first or second person plural. [12] adjectives of nationality follow nouns. [13] insert *c'*, which is used here to give emphasis to the expression. [14] this verb requires no preposition before infinitives. [15] *arriver* (impersonal); place adverb after it. [16] *naturels*, m. pl. [17] *falloir;* place *un* after verb. [18] *pour*. [19] *sa*. [20] *falloir*, followed by infinitive. [21] *on*. [22] *se rendre*. [23] singular.

Exercise 21 (Same Subject).

1. It is hard [1] to be good to [2] the wicked.[3] 2. It is imprudent [1] to speak of the faults of others. 3. It is possible that ours are [4] greater. 4. It takes [5] strength of soul to endure good [6] and evil fortune. 5. It is sweet [1] to love those whom one must [7] respect.[4] 6. It is we who shape our destinies.[8] 7. I believe that it will rain to-morrow. 8. It is we whom you accuse unjustly of this crime. 9. It is late; we must [9] go home. 10. It is already half past four.[10] 11. It is better to be ignorant than to [11] know evil. 12. It is useless [1] to speak to her; she will not listen to you. 13. It is glorious [1] to conquer [12] one's passions. 14. It is true that I ought to have [13] confessed my fault. 15. It is too damp in this house. 16. It is proper that you [14] should return [4] their visit. 17. I did not read your book because it is not interesting. 18. It is certain that he has lost his fortune. 19. It may be [15] that we shall find [4] her at her mother's.[16]

[1] this adjective governs *de* before infinitives. [2] *avec*. [3] plural. [4] subjunctive present. [5] *falloir;* insert 'some' before 'strength.' [6] use definite article before both adjectives. [7] *qu'il faut qu'on*. [8] singular. [9] *falloir*. [10] *quatre heures et demie;* before nouns, *demi* is invariable; †

* Even the best writers do not always observe this rule, and hereafter *c'est*, instead of *ce sont*, will be allowable in this case.

† The Minister's decree authorizes the agreement of this adjective with its noun, whether it precedes or follows the noun. When it precedes, the usual hyphen may be omitted.

after a feminine noun, it becomes feminine, but never plural. [11] *que de.* [12] *surmonter ses.* [13] use past conditional of *devoir.* [14] insert 'to them.' [15] *se peut.* [16] *chez.*

11. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Qui or **qui est-ce qui** (emphatic) = *who*, nominative case for persons.

Note. — **Quel, quelle, quels, quelles** are sometimes used before the verb *to be* for the nominative *who.* Ex.: *who is this lady?* = **qui** est cette dame? *or* **quelle** est cette dame? In the latter case, **quelle** agrees with the noun **dame** understood.

Qui or **qui est-ce que** (emphatic) = *whom*, direct object for persons.
Que or **qu'est-ce que** (emphatic) = *what*, used as direct object only for things.
Qu'est-ce qui = *what*, nominative case for things.
À qui or **de qui** or **à qui est-ce que** or **de qui est-ce que** (emphatic) = *to whom, of whom*, indirect object for persons.
À quoi or **de quoi** or **à quoi est-ce que** (emphatic) = *to what, of what*, indirect object for things.

Notice that **que** changes to **qu'** before vowels, but that **qui** and **quoi** are never elided.

The above pronoun forms have no special inflections for masculine or feminine; this would seem to indicate that their function is not to represent a noun previously mentioned. Compare them with **lequel** = *which one* (masc. sing.), **laquelle** (fem. sing.), **lesquels** = *which ones* (masc. pl.), **lesquelles** (fem. pl.), which stand for a noun already mentioned, or about to be, and must agree with it in gender and number.

Study the following list of idiomatic sentences: —

1. **À qui** est ce livre? = *whose book is this?*
2. **Que de** bontés! **que de** bienfaits! = *what kindness! what goodness!*
3. **Quoi de** plus heureux! = *what could be more fortunate!*
4. **Que** vous êtes bonne! = *how kind you are!*
5. **Quoi!** vous êtes encore ici! = *what! you are still here!*
6. **Que** parlez-vous si haut? = *why do you speak so loud?*
7. **Que** vous en semble-t-il? = *what do you think of it?*
8. **De quoi** s'agit-il? = *what is it? what's the matter?*

9. **De quoi** vous mêlez-vous ? = *what are you meddling with ?*
10. **À quoi** bon tant de mystère ? = *what is the use of so much mystery ?*
11. **Qu'est-ce que c'est que** la vie ? = *what* (emphatic) *is life ?*
12. **Qui** vous dit que je veuille aller la voir ? = *how do you know* or *what makes you suppose that I want to go and see her ?*

Learn the following Gallicisms : —

What is it ? = **qu'est-ce** or **qu'est-ce que c'est ?**
What is that ? = **qu'est-ce que cela** or **qu'est-ce que c'est que cela ?**

Exercise 22.

In the following exercise, when the pronouns can be rendered by two forms, one emphatic and one unemphatic, give both forms for the sake of drill in their use.

1. Whom do[1] you love? Who loves you? 2. Whom does he admire? What do you want? 3. Of whom do you speak? To whom have you spoken? 4. Who is speaking? Whom do you see? 5. What do you see? Of what do you speak? 6. What do you hear? What are you reading? 7. What page? what line? 8. Of which house are you speaking? 9. What is disturbing you? 10. Who is disturbing you? 11. Which letter do you read? Which one[2] are you answering? 12. Who wants to play with us? What[3] do you want to play? 13. With what shall we write? Whose exercise is this?[4] 14. What exercise have you written? Which one shall we write to-morrow? 15. Of which one are you speaking? 16. Who is the lady who was speaking? 17. Who is singing? What is he singing? 18. What makes your brother laugh?[5] 19. What can[6] I do for you? 20. At whom are you smiling? Of[7] what are you thinking? 21. What have I done to you? 22. Who told[8] you that I was[9] here? 23. Who is knocking? 24. With[10] whom are you living?

[1] remember that emphatic and progressive forms like 'do love,' 'is speaking' are translated into French by the simple present tense of corre-

sponding verb. [2] 'to which one.' [3] 'to what.' [4] 'to whom is this exercise?' [5] compare this English construction with the equivalent French *fait rire votre frère?* [6] use *puis* not *peux*, in the interrogative, when subject follows. [7] *à*. [8] past indefinite. [9] imperfect. [10] *chez*.

Exercise 23 (Same Subject).

1. Which one of these houses did[1] your father[2] buy? 2. What prevented[3] you from coming[4] last night? 3. What is that?[5] 4. For whom are you looking? What are you looking at? 5. Which ones are you looking at? 6. What troubles you? What do you mean? 7. Why[6] don't[7] you listen to me? 8. How[8] beautiful your sister is! 9. Whom are you expecting? 10. What[9] is more terrible than such[10] passions! 11. To which one of these men did[1] you apply? 12. What has happened to your brother? 13. To which one of your friends have you written? 14. Whose[11] beautiful rings are these? 15. Of what have you to[12] complain? Of whom have you to complain? 16. With[12] what are you amusing yourself? 17. In[13] what is she guilty? 18. Of all these editions, which one do you advise me to buy? 19. Of what are you accused?[14] 20. Who told[3] you that? What has happened?[15] 21. Which one of these young ladies is he going to marry? 22. What is the use of[16] weeping?[4] 23. How[17] shall we amuse ourselves? 24. To whom must[18] I return this book? 25. What is the use of[16] so much ceremony? 26. Who has sent me these beautiful flowers? Whose[11] gloves are these?

[1] 'did . . . buy'; this emphatic form, especially in the interrogative, is usually translated by the past indefinite; in this case, the participle should agree with object of verb. [2] construe: 'your father has he bought.' [3] past indefinite. [4] infinitive present. [5] see examples of Gallicisms. [6] see No. 6 in list of idiomatic sentences. [7] render this word by putting *ne* before the verb and omitting *pas*. [8] construe 'that (*que*) your sister is beautiful!' [9] see No. 3 in list of idiomatic sentences. [10] *que de telles*. [11] see No. 1 in list of idiomatic sentences. [12] *à*. [13] *en*. [14] put in the active voice with *on*. [15] past indefinite of *se passer*. [16] see No. 10 in list of idiomatic sentences. [17] 'to what.' [18] present indicative of *devoir*.

12. RELATIVE OR CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

Qui = *who, which, what*, nominative case for persons or things **Lequel, laquelle**, etc., are sometimes used for **qui**, when the relative pronoun has two antecedent nouns to either of which it might refer.

Qui = *whom*, direct object for persons, when there is no antecedent expressed. Ex.: devinez **qui** j'ai rencontré aujourd'hui = *guess whom I met to-day.*

À qui, pour qui, auquel, or **pour lequel**, etc. = object of prepositions for persons. Ex.: l'ami **à qui** or **auquel** j'écris = *the friend to whom I am writing.*

Auquel, pour lequel, etc. = only forms as objects of prepositions for things. Ex.: la plume avec **laquelle** j'écris = *the pen with which I write.*

Que = *whom, which, that*, objective case for persons or things. This pronoun can never be omitted in French.

Dont or **duquel** = *whose, of whom, of which*, possessive case for persons or things; **de qui** is also used for persons. When *whose* is preceded by a preposition, **de qui** or **duquel** must be used, never **dont**. Ex.: *the pupil in whose exercise I found a mistake* = l'élève dans le devoir **duquel** j'ai trouvé une faute. *Whose* in English is never separated from its governing noun; **dont** is frequently so, and always heads the relative clause. Ex : *I am going to see the friend whose address you have given me* = je vais voir l'ami **dont** vous m'avez donné l'adresse.

De qui, duquel, not **dont**, are used to express *from whom* Ex.: *the friend from whom I have received this gift* = l'ami **de qui** j'ai reçu ce cadeau.

Dont is used to express the idea of *issuing*, of *being born*, of *descending*, with such verbs as 'sortir,' 'descendre,' or their equivalents.

D'où = *from which, whence*, is used to express the *physical action of coming out.* Ex.: la chambre **d'où** je sors = *the room from which I come.*

Quoi is an indefinite relative, referring to some such antecedent as **ce, rien, chose, voici, voilà**, and is only used after prepositions. Ex.: voici **de quoi** il s'agit = *this is the question ;* je voudrais

savoir **à quoi** vous pensez = *I should like to know of what you are thinking.*

Où is generally used for **à** or **dans** and a relative pronoun with reference to place or time. Ex.: la maison **où** je vous ai connu = *the house where I met you.*

Ce qui = *what* (*that which*), nominative case.

Ce que = *what* (*that which*), objective case.

Ce dont = *what . . . of.* Ex.: *what I complain of* (*that of which I complain*) = **ce dont** je me plains.

Ce à quoi = *what . . . to* or *with.* Ex.: *what you are amusing yourself with* = **ce à quoi** vous vous amusez

Exercise 24.

1. The thing of which I am thinking is very interesting. 2. The merchant for whom I keep[1] books is very rich. 3. I want to know of what you are thinking. 4. Young men talk[2] of[3] what they are doing; old men, of[3] what they have done, and fools, of[3] what they intend[4] to do. 5. I know whom you mean. 6. All that[5] glitters is not gold.[6] 7. You ought[7] to confess frankly what[5] you have done. 8. I want to know of whom you are thinking. 9. It is not the dress,[8] it is not the occupation[9] of a man[10] that degrades him; it is[11] the shameful[12] vices to which he is addicted[13] and of which he does not want to correct himself. 10. I have read the works which Fénelon has written.[14] 11. I know what[5] you are going to say to me. 12. What[15] God does is well done. 13. He[16] is happy whose[17] heart is pure. 14. He[16] is happy who has a pure[12] heart. 15. We do not admire the things which we are accustomed[14] to see. 16. We do not admire the things to which we are accustomed.[14] 17. Vanity is an idol to which we sacrifice everything. 18. It was[18] Racine who introduced[19] into the poetic[12] language of the French[20] that richness and[21] elegance of style to which it owes all its glory.[22] 19. You will never[12] know whom I love. 20. The society which you frequent is not good. 21. The site on which I wish to build is

very large. 22. There is the book about[23] which I have[24] spoken to you so[3] often.[3]

[1] *tiens les.* [2] *disent.* [3] omit this word. [4] *se proposent de.* [5] stands for 'that which.' [6] in this proverb, does the noun 'gold' require the definite article? [7] conditional present of *devoir;* no preposition. [8] *habit,* m. [9] *métier,* m. [10] 'which degrades a man.' [11] *ce sont.* [12] after the word modified. [13] *il se livre.* [14] *composer;* should this participle agree? if so, with what? [15] 'God does well what He does.' [16] *celui-là.* [17] 'of whom.' [18] present. [19] past indefinite. [20] plural [21] repeat 'that.' [22] *lustre,* m. [23] *de.* [24] insert *tant.*

Exercise 25 (Same Subject).

1. I do not know on what his pretensions may be founded.[1] 2. I contemplate the marvels which God has created.[1] 3. The means[2] which he has used[3] are[2] not honest. 4. He is a man in whose[4] prudence you can trust. 5. That is what[5] I am sure of.[6] 6. What I admire most[7] is courage in adversity. 7. It is a disease the cause of which[8] is not known. 8. The friends from whom[9] you expect so many services will do nothing for you. 9. The family from which[10] he descends is honorable. 10. The spring from which[10] the greatest rivers flow[11] is scarcely noticed.[1] 11. There is nothing of which God is[12] not the author, nothing that has[12] not[13] come out[14] of His[15] hands; we owe Him[15] the light that we enjoy[16] and the air that we breathe. 12. We do not always love the persons whose[8] talents we admire. 13. What is there[17] more fragile than riches, which,[18] nevertheless, we pursue all our lives?[2] 14. The laws according to which God has made all things are also those according to which he governs them. 15. The divine promises in which I have always had faith, have comforted me for many griefs.[19] 16. What pleases[20] me does not please everybody. 17. Intoxication is the most shameful[21] state into which[22] a man can[12] fall. 18. The body of man returns to the earth whence it came.[23] 19. Health is a blessing without which all[24] others are nothing. 20. The wicked man[25] rejoices over[16]

what causes[26] the ruin of others.[27] 21. The violet, hiding[28] under the bush, perfumes everything that comes near[29] it; it is the symbol of the modest[21] savant.

[1] see note 14 of Exercise 24. [2] singular. [3] past indefinite. [4] construe: 'to the prudence of whom'; for the translation of 'of whom' see grammatical notes under *dont*. [5] 'that is what' = *voilà*. [6] 'that of which,' etc. [7] insert *c'*. [8] construe: 'of which one knows (*connaître*) not (*point*) the cause.' [9] *dont* or *de qui?* [10] *dont* or *d'où?* [11] *s'échapper;* put verb before subject. [12] subjunctive present. [13] retain *ne* before verb, but omit *pas* because 'nothing' takes its place. [14] conjugated with *être*. [15] no capital. [16] French verb takes *de*. [17] *qu'y a-t-il de.* [18] 'after which, nevertheless, we run,' etc. [19] *de bien des misères.* [20] French verb takes *à*. [21] after the noun. [22] *où*. [23] past indefinite of *sortir*. [24] insert 'the.' [25] omit this word. [26] *faire*. [27] *d'autrui* [28] use past participle. [29] *approcher;* no preposition.

13. INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

Review their forms and uses.

Adjectives. (Construed with nouns.)	Pronouns. (Construed as nouns.)
MASCULINE AND FEMININE.	
Sing. **chaque** = each, every.	Masc. Sing. **chacun**, f. **chacune** = each one, every one.
Sing. **quelque** = some, a little.	Masc. Sing. **quelqu'un** = somebody, anybody.
Pl. **quelques** = some, a few.	**quelques-uns**, f. **quelques-unes** = some, a few, several.
	Masc. Sing. **quelque chose** = something, anything (in the positive sense).
Sing. **quelconque** = (after its noun) Pl. **quelconques**. { whatever; any . . . whatsoever; some sort of; any kind of.	Masc. Sing. **qui, quiconque** = whoever (used chiefly for persons in the singular).
	Masc. Sing. **on, l'on** = one, people, they.

Masc. Sing. **autrui** = others, one's neighbor or fellow-man (only for persons and usually after prepositions). If *others* refers to a distinct noun, and therefore has not a vague or general sense, translate by **autres**.

Masc. Sing. **personne** = anybody, any one; (indef.) nobody, no one (usually with **ne**).

Masc. Sing. **rien** = anything; nothing (usually with **ne**).

Masc. Sing. **l'un l'autre** = each other.

Fem. Sing. **l'une l'autre** = each other.

Masc. Pl. **les uns les autres** = one another.

Fem. Pl. **les unes les autres** = one another.

Adjectives or Pronouns.

Masc. Sing. **nul**, f. **nulle** = no, no one, none (usually with **ne**).

Masc. Sing. **aucun**, f. **aucune** = any one (with reference to a distinct noun); no, no one, nobody, none (usually with **ne**).

Masc. Sing. **tout**, f. **toute** = every, all, any, whole, everything.

Masc. Pl. **tous**, f. **toutes** = all.

Masc. Sing. **tel**, f. **telle**
Masc. Pl. **tels**, f. **telles** } = such; **un tel** = such a (one).

Masc. Sing. **l'un et l'autre**
Fem. Sing. **l'une et l'autre** } = both.

Masc. Pl. **les uns et les autres**
Fem. Pl. **les unes et les autres** } = both kinds.

Remarks. — 1. **On** is the most important indefinite pronoun. It translates *one*, *people*, *they*, and *we* when these words have in English a vague

general, indefinite or impersonal sense. It is frequently found as subject of a verb in the active voice when, in English, the passive voice would be used. Remember that it is used only of persons, always nominatively, and always requires a singular verb.

2. The relatives **qui, quel, quoi, où** form with a following **que** indefinite pronominal phrases: **qui que** = *whoever;* **quel que** = *whatever* and **quoi que** = *whatever;* **où que** = *wherever.* Ex.: **qui que** vous soyez, **quelle que** soit votre fortune, **quoi que** vous disiez = *whoever you may be whatever may be your fortune, whatever you may say.*

Exercise 26.

1. No one[1] is[2] perfect here below. 2. When one seeks truth, one finds it. 3. Both of[3] them[3] came[4] to see my father. 4. Put these books back each one in its[5] place. 5. No man[6] is[2] a[3] prophet in his own[3] country. 6. I do not know any one who is[7] exempt from faults. 7. They have loved[8] each other since their childhood. 8. Did any one[9] come[10] to see me? Nobody came[2] to see you. 9. We must help[11] one another. 10. Every man has some[12] qualities of which he is proud. 11. I hear a[13] noise in that room; I am sure that there is some one there.[3] 12. Whoever is envious and mean is naturally sad. 13. No man is[2] perfectly happy. 14. Men pass one[14] half of their life in[15] regretting the other. 15. We all[16] have strength enough to[17] bear the ills of others. 16. No one has[2] ever seriously doubted[18] the existence of God. 17. The jealous man[3] loves no one. 18. I have never seen such[19] audacity. 19. No path of flowers leads[2] to glory. 20. Speak and we[20] shall listen to you. 21. I want to read something; give me any[21] book.

[1] *nul* or *personne.* [2] put *ne* before the verb and omit *pas* because the subject is a negative word. [3] omit this word. [4] past indefinite; make participle agree with subject. [5] *à sa.* [6] *nul.* [7] present subjunctive. [8] *s'aiment.* [9] unlike 'any one' in sentence 6, 'any one' has here a positive sense, and is equivalent to 'some one'; use *quelqu'un.* [10] past indefinite. [11] a verb followed by 'each other,' 'one another,' must be put in the reflexive form in French. [12] 'some' has here a more emphatic

or restrictive sense than would be implied by *des;* use indefinite adjective. [13] *du.* [14] *la.* [15] *à;* must be followed by infinitive present. [16] 'we have all enough of.' [17] *pour.* [18] insert *de.* [19] 'a such.' [20] *l'on;* verb in the singular. [21] 'any' is here emphatic, standing for *any kind of.*

Exercise 27 (Same Subject).

1. No one is[1] foolish enough[2] to[3] believe him. 2. Every one believes himself better than his neighbor. 3. Did you meet any one?[4] 4. I have not read anything[5] interesting. 5. One recognizes great writers by[6] the simplicity of their style. 6. Each one of us hopes. None of you will succeed.[1] 7. Give me[7] other reasons. 8. Each passion speaks a different language.[8] 9. Men sacrifice everything to their passions. 10. No one is[1] wise at all times.[9] 11. This pupil is not making any progress.[10] 12. I have not received any[11] of the letters that you have written[12] to me. 13. Birds seem to talk[13] to one another.[14] 14. There is never[15] anybody at your house. 15. Men judge[13] one another ill.[16] 16. The two adversaries seized[13] each other. 17. No troops[10] were[17] better disciplined[12] than those of Napoleon. 18. Every one is always indulgent to[3] himself.[18] 19. We must bear patiently with the faults of others. 20. I saw[19] something[5] pretty to-day.

[1] see note 2 under Exercise 26. [2] here an adverb of degree; place before the adjective and omit *de.* [3] *pour.* [4] see note 9 under Exercise 26. [5] 'nothing,' 'not anything,' 'something' require *de* before adjectives; in compound tenses, the *negative* forms are placed between auxiliary and participle. [6] *à.* [7] insert *d'*. [8] *langue* (f.) is the language or idiom of a particular nation: *langage* (m.) is the general term, signifying the manner in which one expresses his thought. [9] *à toute heure.* [10] this word is commonly used in the plural; adjective must agree. [11] feminine singular. [12] is there agreement or not? [13] see note 11 of Exercise 26. [14] construe: 'the ones to the others,' and note the position of 'to' in the two languages. [15] what are the three negatives required in this sentence? [16] adverb follows verb. [17] past definite. [18] the reflexive pronoun is *soi-même*, not *lui-même*, when the subject of the verb is an indefinite pronoun. [19] past indefinite.

14. 'TOUT,' 'MÊME,' 'QUELQUE,' 'QUEL QUE.'

Tout may be an *adjective*, a *pronoun*, an *adverb*, or a *noun*. It is an adjective, and consequently variable, when it directly precedes the noun. In this case, it has the sense of *every* or *any* when these words might be replaced by *all*, followed by a plural. When accompanied by an article or pronoun, it means *all*, *all the*, *the whole*, *a whole*. The plural **tous** translates *all*, *every*.

Tout is a pronoun and variable when it translates *everything* or *all*, not followed by a noun. As a noun, it means *the whole*, *the whole thing*. Ex.: Je prendrai **le tout** = *I will take the whole*.

Tout is an adverb, and invariable, when it modifies an adjective, participle, or other adverb. It is then translated by *quite*, *very*, *wholly*, *entirely*, *rather*. For the sake of euphony, **tout** becomes **toute** or **toutes**, when followed by feminine singular or plural adjectives beginning with a consonant or aspirated 'h.'*

Même may be an *adjective* or an *adverb*. It is an adjective, and consequently variable, when it limits a noun. Placed before the noun, it means *same*; placed after the noun, it means *very* Ex.: la **même** leçon = *the same lesson*; ce jour **même** = *that very day*. It is also joined to the disjunctive personal pronouns **moi**, **toi**,† etc., and translates *self*, *selves*.

Même is an *adverb* and invariable when it modifies a verb, an adjective, or participle. It then translates *even*, *even though*. When modifying a verb, it usually follows it.

Quelque may be an *adjective* or an *adverb*. It is an adjective and variable when it limits a noun. It then translates *some*, *a little* (in the plural *a few*), and is more restrictive in sense than the partitive articles **du**, **de la**, **des**.

Quelque . . . que is an *adverb* and invariable when it modifies an adjective or an adverb. As an adverb, it means *however*. Ex.: **quelque** habile **que** vous soyez = *however clever you may*

---

* The Minister's decree authorizing the agreement of **tout** before feminine adjectives beginning with a vowel or silent 'h,' has since been nullified by the decision of the French Academy.

† The usual hyphen which serves to connect these pronouns with the word **même**, **mêmes** may hereafter be omitted.

be. **Tout . . . que** is also used with this meaning. With a numeral, it means *some.* Ex.: il y a **quelque** cinquante ans = *some fifty years ago.*

Quel que, quelle que, quels que, quelles que, written in two words and found before verbs, means *whatever* and agrees in gender and number with the subject of the verb. Ex.: **quels que** soient vos talents . . ., **quels** (talents) **que** soient vos talents = *whatever your talents may be.*

Exercise 28.

1. Any woman will understand that. 2. Everything has its place. 3. Every child loves playing.[1] 4. Everything depends upon[2] education. 5. We can start; the boats are all[3] ready. 6. These ladies are quite[3] happy. 7. This young lady is quite[4] confused, quite[4] ashamed. 8. She was[5] quite surprised to see me. 9. The whole[6] house burned,[7] and they have lost everything.[8] 10. All[6] serpents are not venomous. 11. We all[9] have the same origin. 12. The same causes produce the same effects. 13. Even[10] the wicked[11] respect virtue. 14. Some crimes always[9] precede great crimes. 15. The gods themselves became[5] jealous of the shepherds. 16. Gentleness captivates all[6] hearts. 17. We[12] must obey the laws, though[3] unjust. 18. I received[7] your telegram the very day of my arrival. 19. Mothers love even[3] the faults of their children. 20. He has some talents; he will make his way. 21. However[3] good your reasons[9] may be, they will not be heard.[13] 22. Whatever[14] human beings may be, we must[15] live with them. 23. We lost[7] some five hundred men in that engagement. 24. It is easy to deceive even[3] the most clever.[11] 25. Rome adopted[5] all the gods and all the superstitions of the peoples whom she had vanquished.[16] 26. Whatever[14] your illusions may be, time will destroy them. 27. From one end of the earth to the other, men have the same virtues and the same vices.

[1] *le jeu.* [2] *de l'.* [3] is the French equivalent for this word, as here used, an adverb or an adjective? [4] why does *tout* agree here, though an

adverb? [5] past definite. [6] 'all the.' [7] past indefinite. [8] preceder 'lost.' [9] place after the verb. [10] place after the noun, and see note 3. [11] plural. [12] *on.* [13] 'one will not listen to them.' [14] see examples in the rules under *quel que.* [15] *il faut.* [16] pluperfect; with what does the participle agree?

15. VERBS CONJUGATED WITH 'ÊTRE.'

The following verbs are always conjugated with **être.** This auxiliary should not convey to the American pupil the meaning of *to be*, but of *to have:* thus, **il est tombé** does not mean *he is fallen*, but *he has fallen.* Most of the following are verbs of motion, and they usually indicate not only the action, but a change of position or condition of the subject as the result of the action.

aller = to go.
partir = to go away, to leave, to start.
sortir = to go out, to come out.
arriver = to arrive.
entrer = to enter, come in.
rentrer = get in, come home, get home.
venir = to come.
revenir = to return, to come back.
devenir = to become.
intervenir = to intervene.
parvenir = to attain, reach, succeed in.
provenir = to come from, to issue.
rester = to remain, stay.
tomber = to fall.
naître (active in French) = to be born.
éclore = to hatch, to open, to dawn.
mourir = to die.
décéder = to die, to decease, to expire.
advenir = to occur, happen.

Note.—The exercise given below offers numerous examples of the use in French of the past indefinite where the simple past tense is required in English. This difference between the two languages should be carefully noted by the learner. He should also apply the rule for the agreement of the participle with the subject of the verb when the auxiliary is **être** See page 79.

Exercise 29.

1. We went[1] to see your sister yesterday. 2. We found[1] no one at home; everybody had gone[2] to[3] the country. 3. My master went out[1] early this morning, and he has not

yet returned.[4] 4. Did you go out[1] yesterday morning? No, I stayed[1] at home all the morning, on account of the bad weather. 5. I arrived[1] too late to[3] catch the ten o'clock train.[5] 6. I should have arrived in[6] time if I had started[2] two minutes sooner. 7. The joke went[1] too far. 8. How long[7] did he stay in[6] Paris? 9. Did you return for your sister's wedding?[8] 10. This insect was[9] born and died[1] the same day. 11. My sister fell[1] in[6] the middle of the street. 12. The Jews had left[10] Egypt under the guidance of Moses. 13. Reading has become a cheap[11] pleasure. 14. Your brother went out[1] to[5] buy a newspaper. 15. He got into[12] the carriage with his father, and I have not seen[13] him since. 16. The works of this author perished[14] with[15] him. 17. I should have died rather than[16] consent to that proposition. 18. People[17] have succeeded in[6] taming these wild[11] beasts. 19. About twelve o'clock,[18] I came down[1] to the dining-room to eat[19] my lunch. 20. I have not seen your friend lately. What has become of him?[20] 21. We entered[1] the boat and[21] started.[1] 22. A new project has dawned[22] in his imagination. 23. We came home[1] very late. 24. All sciences, all arts were[9] born[23] among free[11] nations.

[1] past indefinite. [2] pluperfect of *partir*. [3] *pour*. [4] *rentré*. [5] 'train of ten hours.' [6] *à*. [7] *combien de temps*. [8] *les noces de*. [9] present. [10] pluperfect of *sortir de*. [11] place after the noun. [12] *monter en*; omit 'the.' [13] *revoir*. [14] *mourir*. [15] *comme*. [16] *plutôt que de*. [17] *on*. [18] *vers midi*. [19] *prendre*. [20] 'what has he become?' [21] repeat subject. [22] *éclos*. [23] masculine plural.

16. REFLEXIVE VERBS.

Simple and Compound Tenses.

The following are among the most frequently found of reflexive verbs; the meanings of some differ when the verb is not reflexive: as, **douter** = *to doubt;* **se douter** = *to suspect.*

The compound tenses of reflexive verbs always take **être**, and the past participle agrees with the pronoun objects **me, te, se, nous, vous, se.**

tromper = to deceive.
se tromper = to be mistaken.
appeler = to call.
s'appeler = to be named.
servir = to serve.
se servir de = to use.
lever = to raise.
se lever = to rise.
plaire = to please.
se plaire à = to delight in, to like.
s'amuser = to enjoy one's self.
s'arrêter = to stop.
se fier à = to trust.
se coucher = to go to bed.
s'habiller = to dress.
s'endormir = to go to sleep.
se taire = to be silent, to keep silence.
s'efforcer = to endeavor.
s'ennuyer = to be bored, lonesome; to find time tedious.
trouver = to find.
se trouver = to be.
apercevoir = to see.
s'apercevoir = to notice, become aware of.
passer = to pass.
se passer de = to do without.
aller = to go.
s'en aller = to go away.
rire = to laugh.
se rire de = to make fun of.
se rappeler = to recall.
se souvenir de = to remember.
s'emparer de = to seize, to take possession.
s'empresser = to be eager to.
s'approcher de = to come up, go up to.
s'éloigner de = come away from, go away from.

Exercise 30.

1. We abstained[1] from any[2] remarks. 2. Were you lonesome[3] while I was[4] absent? 3. I have always rejoiced over your success. 4. Why did you not come? We should have been delighted[5] to see you. 5. If I had[6] youth and health, I should not mind[7] poverty. 6. One often[8] repents having[9] spoken. 7. Why did you go away[3] from the window? 8. Do you remember these young ladies? 9. You forgot[1] to water your flowers, and they have faded.[1] 10. The French took possession[1] of Holland in the dead of[10] winter. 11. The love of the native[8] soil never[8] dies[11] in the heart of man. 12. Fish are caught[12] with hooks, and men are caught with presents.

13. If any one had entered the apartment, I should have waked up. 14. The wicked fear,[13] hate, avoid one another. 15. My father will be angry if you stop to[14] talk with me. 16. You are sleepy because you went to bed[1] late last night. 17. The things of which we complain[15] most bitterly are sometimes very insignificant. 18. Use my dictionary. 19. He remembers that you made fun[1] of him. 20. Make haste to rise and[16] dress yourself. 21. My mother likes to cultivate her flowers. 22. You behaved[1] very well[17] in that affair. 23. I noticed[18] that you had gone to sleep.[19] 24. Don't worry too much about the future.

[1] past indefinite. [2] *toutes*. [3] in the interrogative of compound tenses of reflexive verbs, the object pronoun precedes, and the subject pronoun follows the auxiliary. [4] imperfect. [5] past conditional of *se bien réjouir de*. [6] change to *avec*. [7] present conditional of *se soucier peu de*. [8] place after word modified. [9] infinitive present. [10] *dans le fort de*. [11] *s' éteindre*. [12] *se prendre*. [13] place *se* before each of these verbs and omit 'one another.' [14] *à*. [15] insert *le*. [16] repeat preposition. [17] place between auxiliary and participle. [18] past definite. [19] pluperfect.

17. ACTIVE VOICE WITH 'ON' FOR THE SUBJECT.

Note. — In the following exercise, the subjects of all the principal verbs, — such words as *people*, *we*, *one*, *they*, *mortals*, *men*, etc., — must be rendered into French by the indefinite pronoun *on*, and the verbs and all attributes of the subject must agree with it in the singular.

Exercise 31.

1. People envy the fate of a rich[1] and beautiful young girl. 2. We praise noble[2] deeds, but we do not imitate them. 3. One is never ugly when one has a beautiful soul. 4. Mortals wear away life in[3] pursuing[4] happiness, and[5] die without having[4] attained it. 5. People often[6] lose their[7] reputation for having[4] ill chosen their[8] friends. 6. We cease to be unhappy when we begin to hope. 7. Much rest is often lost[9] for a little gold. 8. People rarely[6] succeed when they[5] undertake a great many

things at once. 9. Men are moulded[9] by education. 10. When we have not what we[10] like, we must[11] like what we[10] have. 11. The beloved[6] voice of a friend is easily[6] recognized.[8] 12. When we are hungry, the coarsest[6] food seems delicious. 13. Men run to[12] avenge a light[6] offence and they[10] often[6] forgive a very serious[6] wrong. 14. We do not hate all those whom we[10] despise. 15. Joseph's cup was found[13] in Benjamin's bag. 16. When we oblige a[12] friend[12] promptly, we oblige him[12] twofold. 17. The canary is more easily[6] raised[9] than the nightingale. 18. The[12] more one talks, the[12] less one thinks. 19. It was formerly believed[9] that the appearance of a comet foreboded[14] great events. 20. One succeeds in many things with a little patience. 21. It was formerly believed[9] that the earth was[14] flat.

[1] place 'rich' and 'beautiful' after the noun. [2] *les belles.* [3] *à.* [4] remember that, with the exception of *en*, all prepositions govern the infinitive. [5] repeat *on.* [6] place after the word modified. [7] *sa.* [8] *ses.* [9] change to active form, thus: *on perd souvent bien du*, etc. [10] *l'on.* [11] *il faut.* [12] omit this word. [13] past definite; see note 9. [14] put both verbs in the imperfect.

18. FOUR IMPORTANT MODAL VERBS: 'DEVOIR,' 'FALLOIR,' 'POUVOIR,' 'VOULOIR.'

a. **Devoir**: to owe; must, to have to; to be to; ought, etc.

Note.—This verb, of constant use in French, offers much difficulty to the learner. Not defective in a single part, its different tenses correspond to a number of defective English auxiliaries: **must** (*must have had to, shall have to, should have to*), **to be to** (*am to, was to*), **ought** (*ought to have*), etc. When **must** and **ought** refer to some past action, their forms remain unchanged, but the infinitive following them changes from a present to a past; this is because the English modal verbs have no form for the past participle. In French, the infinitive remains unchanged, while the auxiliary verb is put in a compound tense, exactly like any other verb. **Ex.**: *I ought to say*

I ought to have said = **je devrais dire, j'aurais dû dire.** This difference in the construction is also observable in **pouvoir** and **falloir.**

The following conjugation of **devoir,** — as well as that of **falloir, pouvoir, vouloir,** given further, — is intended to assist the student in understanding the literal and idiomatic meanings of the most important tenses of these verbs; the less common tenses and more infrequent constructions have been purposely omitted, so as not to confuse the mind of the learner at this stage of his work. He should memorize perfectly the meanings of the moods and tenses given, and constantly refer to them while translating the English forms into French.

SIMPLE TENSES.

Indicative Present:	**Je dois** = I owe. **Je dois aller** = I am to go, I must go, I have to go, I am obliged to go, it is necessary for me to go.
Indicative Imperfect:	**Je devais** = I owed, I was owing. **Je devais aller** = I was to go, I had to go, I was obliged to go, it was necessary for me to go.
Past Definite:	**Je dus** = I owed. **Je dus aller** = I had to go, I was obliged to go, it was necessary for me to go.
Future:	**Je devrai** = I shall owe. **Je devrai aller** = I shall have to go, I shall be obliged to go, it will be necessary for me to go.
Conditional Present:	**Je devrais** = I should owe. **Je devrais aller** = I ought to go, I should go, I should have to go, I should be obliged to go, it would be necessary for me to go.
Subjunctive Present:	**Que je doive** = that I may *or* shall owe. **Que je doive aller** = that I may have to go, that I must go, that I may be obliged to go, that it may *or* shall be necessary for me to go.
Subjunctive Imperfect:	**Que je dusse** = that I might *or* should owe. **Que je dusse aller** = that I might have to go, that I should be obliged to go, that I should have to go that it might *or* would be necessary for me to go.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Past Indefinite:	**J'ai dû** = I have owed. **J'ai dû aller** = I have had to go, I have been obliged to go, it has been necessary for me to go, I must have gone.
Indicative Pluperfect:	**J'avais dû** = I had owed. **J'avais dû aller** = I had had to go, I had been obliged to go, it had been necessary for me to go.
Future Anterior:	**J'aurai dû** = I shall have owed. **J'aurai dû aller** = I shall have had to go, I shall have been obliged to go, it will have been necessary for me to go, I must have gone. (The future anterior of ordinary verbs sometimes has this idiomatic meaning. Ex.: elle **aura rencontré** sa mère, she must have met her mother.)
Conditional Past:	**J'aurais dû** = I should have owed. **J'aurais dû aller** = I ought to have gone, I should have gone, I should have had to go, I should have been obliged to go, it would have been necessary for me to go.

Exercise 32.

Note. — In the following exercise, where *must* or its equivalents occur, **devoir** and not **falloir** must be used. Remember that when **devoir** is used as an auxiliary, it never takes any preposition before the following infinitive.

1. She is looking at you curiously; she must be surprised to see you here. 2. You must[1] have been[2] very glad to see your friend again after such a long[3] separation. 3. Your mother is to meet you at our house at three o'clock. 4. The poor little creature must be frozen. 5. I ought[4] not to speak of myself. 6. The best of[5] things must be taken[6] in[7] small quantities.[8] 7. She ought[9] to have shown[2] more tenderness. 8. Every mortal must act. 9. These were[10] reasons which I could[11] not but[5] understand. 10. He must[1] have left[2] you a great

deal of money. 11. Tell him that he ought[4] to be ashamed of[5] himself.[5] 12. I related[12] to him how I had had to[13] part from my only friend. 13. You must[1] have walked[2] a long time; how hungry you must all be![14] 14. You must have been told[15] that I was[16] a[5] great friend of your father. 15. I am going to see the judge who is to question you to-morrow. 16. Young men must ask counsel of[17] old men. 17. The feast was to[11] last all night. 18. You must have received[18] a very bad impression of me. 19. My sister should[9] not have come;[2] she ought to have stayed quietly at home. 20. We must make moderate use[19] of the advantages that fortune procures us. 21. He who is loved by all should[4] live forever. 22. I do not know if he is to marry her. 23. The countess was[16] the woman who owed[16] her the most. 24. He must have had[20] time to hide them. 25. He must have gone[20] to see them yesterday. 26. He did not[21] have[16] his watch; he must[13] have sold it to buy different objects for himself[22] and[23] me. 27. My son-in-law is a man; he ought[4] to protect me. 28. You, too,[24] must be very much[5] changed. 29. It was there that we were to[16] spend the night. 30. You ought not to remain thus six weeks without writing to your mother. 31. He knew[16] that this[25] was to[16] cure him. 32. We must take some[26] precautions against the cold. 33. He must have hidden[20] himself somewhere while we were[16] out of doors. 34. You should[4] not allow that child to behave thus. 35. In a few days, you will know what you will have to[27] do.

[1] past indefinite. [2] put in the present infinitive. [3] *une si longue.* [4] observe that the special function of the present conditional of *devoir* is to translate 'ought' or 'should' as used here. [5] omit this word. [6] past participle must agree in the feminine plural. [7] *en*, not *dans*, is generally used when the following noun is not preceded by an article or limiting adjective. [8] singular. [9] past conditional. [10] *c'étaient-là des.* [11] translate by the imperfect of *devoir* in the affirmative. [12] past definite. [13] plu-perfect of *devoir*. [14] turn: 'how (*comme*) you must have all hunger!' [15] change this passive to the active voice, and see notes 1 and 2. [16] imper-

fect. [17] *à.* [18] *emporter.* [19] *user avec modération.* [20] replace *devoir* by future anterior of this verb. [21] *plus.* [22] *lui.* [23] repeat preposition. [24] repeat the subject. [25] *cela.* [26] *nos.* [27] future.

b. **Falloir**: *must*, to have to, to be obliged to, to be necessary.

Indicative Present:	**Il faut que vous veniez** = you must come, it is necessary that you should come.
Future:	**Il faudra que vous veniez** = you must come, you will have to come, you will be obliged to come, it will be necessary for you to come.
Indicative Imperfect:	**Il fallait que vous vinssiez** = you should have come, you had to come, you were obliged to come, it was necessary that you should come.
Past Definite:	**Il fallut que vous vinssiez** (= same meanings as those of the imperfect, but referring to some definite moment in the past).
Conditional Present:	**Il faudrait que vous vinssiez** = you should have to come, you would be obliged to come, it would be necessary for you to come, you ought to come.
Subjunctive Present:	**Croyez-vous qu'il faille venir?** = do you think that I must come? that I should come? that it is necessary for me to come?
Subjunctive Imperfect:	**Croyiez-vous qu'il fallût venir?** = did you think that I should come? that I had to come? that I was obliged to come? that it was necessary for me to come?
Past Indefinite:	**Il a fallu que vous vinssiez** = you have had to come, you have been obliged to come, it has been necessary for you to come.
Pluperfect.	**Il avait fallu que vous vinssiez** = you had had to come, you had been obliged to come, it had been necessary for you to come.
Conditional Past:	**Il aurait fallu que vous vinssiez** = you would have had to come, you would have been obliged to come, it would have been necessary for you to come, you ought to have come.

Falloir as the equivalent of the impersonal verb *it takes* :—

Il lui faut une heure pour venir ici = it takes her an hour to come here.
Il lui fallait, etc. = it used to take her an hour, etc.
Il lui fallut, etc. = it took her (on one particular occasion) an hour to come here.
Il lui faudra, etc. = it will take her, etc.
Il lui faudrait, etc. = it would take her, etc.
Croyez-vous qu'il lui faille, etc. = do you think it will take, etc.
Croyiez-vous qu'il lui fallût, etc. = did you think it would take, etc.
Il lui a fallu, etc. = it has taken her, etc.
Il lui avait fallu, etc. = it had taken her, etc.
Il lui aura fallu, etc. = it will have taken, etc.
Il lui aurait fallu, etc. = it would have taken, etc.

Other meanings of **falloir** are : *to want, to need, to lack* Ex. : avez-vous tout ce qu'il vous **faut**? **Il me faut** une chandelle et du savon = *have you all that you need? I need a candle and some soap;* **il** lui **faut** encore dix francs = *he still lacks ten francs.*

Note. — The following remarks are to be carefully studied by the pupil: they are intended to emphasize some of the differences which exist between the nature and uses of **falloir** and *must.*

1. **Falloir** is an impersonal verb; *must* is not.
2. **Falloir** is defective in the present participle only; *must* is defective in all parts but one; and, as in the case of **devoir**, replaces the parts wanting by *to have to, to be obliged to*, etc.
3. *It is necessary* naturally suggests itself to the mind of the beginner as the proper translation for **il faut**, because both forms are impersonal and therefore seem to correspond, but they do not always in sense. On the contrary, the impersonal verb *to be necessary* would, in many cases, mistranslate **falloir**, which has not only all the imperative force of *must*, but all the forms of mood and

tense which are lacking in *must;* thus, **il ne faut pas que vous trahissiez sa confiance** does not mean *it is not necessary that you should betray his confidence*, but *you must not betray his confidence.*

4. **Falloir**, as a verb of necessity, is followed either by *an infinitive past* or *present*, or by *a subjunctive clause.* The latter construction is considered to give more clearness, more definiteness, to the statement. The infinitive conveys the idea of necessity in a more general, more vague and less personal sense. Ex.: **il faut payer** ses dettes = *one must pay one's debts;* **il faut pardonner** à ses amis = *we should forgive our friends;* **il faut s'accoutumer** aux petites misères de la vie = *we must get used to the small worries of life.* However, the infinitive often follows when the idea of personal necessity is implied by some sentence preceding **falloir.** Ex.: vous arrivez toujours un peu en retard; **il faut partir** plus tôt = *you always arrive a little late; you must start earlier.*

Exercise 33.

Note. — In the following exercise, where *must* or its equivalents occur, **falloir** and not **devoir** must be used. While in some cases synonyms, **falloir** corresponds more closely to the English verb in expressing imperative necessity. It will also translate properly the passive voice. Ex.: *he must be spoken to;* **il faut qu'on lui parle.** When **falloir** is in a past or conditional tense, it is followed by the infinitive rather than the subjunctive.

1. The child must[1] obey. 2. You must go and[2] see your aunt to-morrow. 3. I have exactly what I need.[3] 4. We[4] must think deeply[5] before we act.[6] 5. It was necessary[7] that you should keep me informed[8] of this affair. 6. You must endure what you cannot prevent. 7. We shall have to get up[9] very early to take that train. 8. We[4] must render to each one what is due to him. 9. We shall have to get under shelter[10] in the first house we meet.[11] 10. The law must[1] be

severe and men indulgent. 11. We[4] must not judge a man[12] by what he says, but by what he does. 12. He has to be amused[13] like a child. 13. My father must not suspect that we have talked together. 14. It did not take[14] me long to understand the cause of all these cries. 15. You spoke[15] to me, but I did not hear you; you must speak louder. 16. You must accept my proposition now or never. 17. I should give up my rights if I had to[7] claim them before the courts. 18. One[4] must not occupy houses that[2] are[2] badly built and unhealthy. 19. He is in a perspiration;[16] he must have run.[17] 20. We must[18] keep some provisions for our dinner. 21. One of us will have to sit up[18] to keep up the fire. 22. This affair must[1] be promptly concluded. 23. I did not believe[7] that it would be necessary[19] to take this journey. 24. It was necessary[14] that Heaven should raise[20] Joan of Arc to deliver France from the English. 25. Here is one card of invitation; you don't need two.[21] 26. It must be confessed[13] that I, too, was terribly hungry.[22] 27. One[4] must know how[2] to be rich. 28. Will it take you very[2] long to run to my sister's? 29. Do you think it is necessary[23] to pay that money now? 30. If I had not had to[24] take care of[25] the house, I should have gone to your house. 31. It is[26] ten o'clock; I must[1] leave you. 32. Your master owes me too much money already;[27] you must go away from here.

[1] 'it is necessary that.' [2] omit this word. [3] 'what to me is necessary.' [4] such subjects as 'we,' 'one,' etc., found before *must* in sentences where the idea expressed is general or impersonal, must be rendered into French by *il*. [5] *réfléchir mûrement*. [6] infinitive present. [7] imperfect. [8] *me tenir au courant*. [9] in this construction, the verb may be translated either by the subjunctive present of the corresponding French verb, or by the infinitive, as in English, preceded by a personal pronoun object of the same person as the subject of the first verb. [10] *se mettre à l'abri*; see note 9. [11] future. [12] *juger de quelqu'un*. [13] 'it is necessary to' . . . [14] use past definite of *falloir*. [15] past indefinite. [16] *en nage*. [17] translate 'have run' by the third person singular of the past subjunctive of

courir. [18] turn: 'it will be necessary that one of us sit up' (present subjunctive). [19] imperfect subjunctive. [20] *suscitât.* [21] add 'of them' and place before the verb. [22] 'had a hunger terrible.' [23] present subjunctive of *falloir.* [24] pluperfect indicative of *falloir*, preceded by *m'*; omit the second negative. [25] *garder.* [26] *voici.* [27] place immediately after *devoir.*

c. Pouvoir: *can*, could; *may*, might; *to be able.*

Indicative Present:	**Je peux** *or* **puis aller** = I can go, I may go.
Indicative Imperfect:	**Je pouvais aller** = I could go, I was able to go.
Past Definite:	**Je pus aller** = I could go, I was able to go (on some particular occasion).
Future:	**Je pourrai aller** = I can go, I shall go, I shall be able to go.
Conditional Present:	**Je pourrais aller** = I could go, I might go, I should be able to go.
Subjunctive Present:	**Que je puisse aller** = that I can *or* may go, that I shall go, that I may be able to go.
Subjunctive Imperfect:	**Que je pusse aller** = that I could *or* might go, that I should be able to go.
Past Indefinite:	**J'ai pu aller** = I could go, I can have gone, I have been able to go, I was able to go.
Indicative Pluperfect:	**J'avais pu aller** = I could have gone, I had been able to go.
Future Anterior:	**J'aurai pu aller** = I shall have been able to go, it will have been possible for me to go.
Conditional Past:	**J'aurais pu aller** = I could have gone, I might have gone, I should *or* might have been able to go.
Subjunctive Past:	**Que j'aie pu aller** = that I may have *or* shall have gone, that I can have gone, that I may have been able to go.
Subjunctive Pluperfect:	**Que j'eusse pu aller** = that I might *or* should have gone, that I might *or* should have been able to go.

Infinitive Past:	**Avoir pu aller** = to have been able to go.
Compound of Present Participle:	**Ayant pu aller** = having been able to go.

Note the following remarks: —

1. The second negative is frequently omitted after **pouvoir**, and no preposition ever follows directly.
2. Notice that the compound tenses of **pouvoir** are followed by an infinitive present which must be translated by the past of the infinitive verb in English. This is because the ordinary English equivalents of **pouvoir** — can, could, may, might — have no participle forms. Ex.: **j'aurais pu aller** chez lui = *I could have gone to his house.*
3. The use of **pouvais** and **pourrais** should not be confused. **Pouvais** is past, and translates *could* in the sense of *was able;* **pourrais** is conditional or potential, and translates *could* in the sense of *would be able, might, might be able.*
4. The future, and not the present, must be used to translate *can*, when the verb refers to a future and not a present action. Ex.: je ne sais pas si je **pourrai** venir demain = *I do not know if I can come to-morrow.*
5. **Pouvoir** is also used in such reflexive and impersonal forms as **il se peut**, in the sense of *it may be, it is possible.* When so used, it is always followed by the subjunctive.
6. The subjunctive present of **pouvoir** used independently translates *may*, to express *desire, wish, congratulations.* Ex.: **puissiez**-vous être heureux ! = may you be happy !
7. When 'I cannot,' 'I could not,' mean *I do not know how*, these forms are sometimes translated by the conditional of **savoir** instead of **pouvoir.** In this use of the verb, **pas** is omitted. Ex.: je ne **saurais** vous dire où elle demeure = *I could not tell you where she lives;* l'homme **le** plus heureux ne **saurait** se passer d'un ami = *the happiest of men cannot do without a friend.*

Exercise 34.

1. Could[1] you tell me what plant is the most useful[2] to man? 2. When I can[3] follow you, I shall.[4] 3. I did not do the way[5] you told[6] me to do, because I couldn't.[7] 4. May I talk[8] with you for half an hour? 5. You might[9] have broken[10] your leg. 6. Not knowing Latin, you might[11] forget this word. 7. You told[7] my sister that you could[1] not come to dine at our house. 8. I have never been able to speak of it to any one. 9. I might[11] perhaps give you a good counsel. 10. My brother could[1] not believe that he had spoken[12] so indiscreetly. 11. That is unfortunate, but we[13] can't help it.[14] 12. Never can[3] I[15] leave the country where I was born. 13. You would like[16] to remain here, but that cannot[17] be. 14. Agriculture is the noblest occupation[18] which a man can[19] follow.[20] 15. I cannot accept your conditions. 16. How can[7] you have passed[21] ten long[22] days without seeing her? 17. She used to scold[23] me gravely as a mother[24] might have[9] done.[25] 18. One moment[26] may destroy a century of happiness. 19. You will do all you can[3] to go to sleep? 20. The lover might[11] suspect that he has a rival. 21. He has done all that he could[7] to render me that service. 22. I have spent many[27] hours in[28] asking myself how I could[6] have said such a thing.[29] 23. You are right; I could not[30] live without you. 24. You think you can[31] depend on that young man? 25. Heaven grant[32] you long and happy days! 26. I am afraid that you cannot[19] succeed. 27. No one can read these touching words without weeping. 28. I do not know what[33] others might have[9] thought of me; but to be sincere, I must declare that I thought[23] myself superb. 29. Although my friend was[34] guilty, I could[23] not think[35] of abandoning him. 30. Since I had left Paris, I had not been able to earn a cent. 31. A grand inquisitor might have[12] envied that smile. 32. I thought[36] that in the midst of these blocks of granite, we might[11] find a shelter against the coolness of the night. 33. Where can[7] he have hidden them?

34. I do not know if I can[3] come to-morrow. Why could you not come to-morrow? Because I have a thousand things to[28] do. 35. I could[9] not have finished this work, if you had not helped[6] me. 36. May I be useful to you in[37] anything? 37. I have only you to whom I can[19] complain. 38. Who could weary of admiring nature? 39. If I thought[23] that your project could[34] succeed, I would not refuse to take part in it.[38]

[1] see remark (3). [2] turn: 'what is the plant the most useful.' [3] see remark (4). [4] repeat 'follow.' [5] *comme*. [6] put the French verb in the pluperfect indicative. [7] past indefinite. [8] *s'entretenir avec*. [9] past conditional of *pouvoir*. [10] put this verb in the reflexive form and translate the following possessive adjective by *une*. [11] present conditional of *pouvoir*. [12] put the French verb in the pluperfect subjunctive. [13] insert *y*. [14] 'help it' must be rendered by *rien*. [15] must precede 'can.' [16] present conditional of *vouloir*. [17] use the reflexive form. [18] *métier*, m. [19] present subjunctive. [20] *exercer*. [21] *rester*. [22] *grands*. [23] imperfect indicative [24] place after the predicate. [25] put this verb in the present infinitive. [26] *instant*, m. [27] *bien des*. [28] *à*. [29] *parole*, f. [30] see remark (7). [31] render 'you can' by infinitive present. [32] turn: 'give you some,' and see remark (6). [33] insert *d'*. [34] imperfect subjunctive. [35] 'have the idea to' (*de*). [36] past definite. [37] *en*. [38] *de m'y associer*.

d. **Vouloir**: to want, to wish, to will; **Vouloir bien**, to be willing to, to agree to, to consent, to acquiesce.

Indicative Present:	**Je veux** = I wish, I want, I will. **Je veux bien** = I am willing, I consent, etc. **Je ne veux pas** = I will not, I don't want to, I won't
Indicative Imperfect:	**Je voulais** = I wished, I wanted, I would. **Je ne voulais pas** = I did not want to, I wouldn't.
Past Definite:	**Je voulus** = I wished, I wanted, I would (on a particular occasion). **Je ne voulus pas** = I did not wish *or* want to, I wouldn't.
Future:	**Je voudrai** = I shall wish, I shall want, I will, etc. **Je ne voudrai pas** = I shall not want to.

Conditional:	**Je voudrais** = I should like, I should wish to *or* **want** to, I would. **Je voudrais bien** = I should very much like to. **Je ne voudrais pas** = I shouldn't like to, I wouldn't.
Subjunctive Present:	**Que je veuille** = that I may *or* that I shall wish to *or* want to.
Subjunctive Imperfect:	**Que je voulusse** = that I might *or* that I should **wish** to *or* want to.
Past Indefinite:	**J'ai voulu** = I wanted, I wished, I would, I have wished, I have wanted, I have been willing. **J'ai bien voulu** = I have agreed, consented, acquiesced. **Je n'ai pas voulu** = I didn't wish to *or* want to, I wouldn't.
Indicative Pluperfect:	**J'avais voulu** = I had wished *or* wanted. **Je n'avais pas voulu** = I hadn't wanted to *or* wished to.
Conditional Past:	**J'aurais voulu** = I should have liked, I should have wished, etc. **J'aurais bien voulu** = I should have liked ever so much to, etc. **Je n'aurais pas voulu** = I shouldn't have wished to *or* wanted to, I wouldn't have.
Subjunctive Past:	**Que j'aie voulu** = that I may *or* shall have wished *or* wanted.
Subjunctive Pluperfect:	**Que j'eusse voulu** = that I might *or* should **have** wished *or* wanted.

Note the following remarks:—

1. *Will* is used in English either to form a future tense: *she will return soon* = elle reviendra bientôt; or, to express wish, desire, willingness, consent, acquiescence: *will you go to the garden with me?* = voulez-vous aller au jardin avec moi? Notice that the verb **vouloir** translates only the latter of these two meanings.

2. **Je veux** translates *I wish, I want,* in the sense of 'it is my will.' Ex.: *I want you to go out every day* = je veux que vous sortiez tous les jours. **Je voudrais** translates *I wish, I want,* in the sense of 'I should like,' 'it is my desire.' Ex.: *I wish, I want, I would like to speak to my mother* = je **voudrais** parler à ma mère.

3. When the desire or wish expressed refers to one's self, the following verb is put in the infinitive as in English. Ex.: *I want to start immediately* = je **veux partir** tout de suite. But when that desire or will refers to some one else, the following verb cannot, as in English, be put in the infinitive, but must be put in a subjunctive tense. Ex.: *I want you to leave immediately* = je veux **que vous partiez** tout de suite.

4. **Veuillez** — an imperative and subjunctive form of **vouloir** — is frequently used for 'please,' 'be kind enough to,' etc. Ex.: *please wait for me here* = **veuillez** m'attendre ici.

5. After **devoir, falloir, pouvoir, vouloir.** the infinitive which completes the sense of these verbs is often omitted in French as in English. Ex.: *You have not given this matter all the attention that you should* = vous n'avez pas donné à cette affaire toute l'attention que vous **auriez dû**; *he was trying to talk, but he couldn't* = il s'efforçait de parler, mais il ne le **pouvait**; *you don't want to obey, but you must* = vous ne voulez pas obéir, mais il le **faut**; *I begged him to stay, but he wouldn't* = je l'ai prié de rester, mais il n'a pas **voulu**.

Exercise 35.

1. Will you stay with me while your mother is[1] in[2] the country? 2. I should have liked to wait for you; but I was[3] afraid of missing my train. 3. She hesitated;[3] she did not want[3] to let him go.[4] 4. He could[5] have written, if he had wished[6] to.[7] 5. Please tell my cousin that I am waiting for

her. 6. Would you like to speak to my father? 7. You could have gone[4] with them. Yes, but I did not want[8] to.[7] 8. He could[9] serve me in this matter, if he wished.[3] 9. I regret that you do not wish[10] to follow my advice.[11] 10. If you wish to succeed, you must work. 11. I should have written to you, if you had wished it. 12. Will you accept my father's proposition? 13. I should like[9] to be able to relieve all the suffering[12] that I see. 14. I will do everything that you want[1] us to do.[13] 15. If you like,[14] I will go and[7] get him. 16. We should like to speak to your daughter in private.[15] 17. Does she want to go with us or stay with them? 18. It is not possible that your mother wishes[10] to leave us so soon. 19. What do you want me to do[13] with[16] such a sum? 20. Be good enough to carry[17] this letter to its address. 21. I wanted[8] to take[18] you to the park. 22. You do not know whether[19] she will want to stay here after your departure. 23. The lazy boy[7] would like to eat the nut, but he does not want to break the shell. 24. I wished[20] to explain my reasons to him, but he would[20] not listen to me. 25. I should like[5] to have slept, but I was too thoroughly excited[21] to[22] find calm and sleep. 26. The master wants me to know[13] my lessons well.[15] 27. I am willing to forgive him. 28. We should like to accept your kind[23] invitation. 29. May God help you![24] 30. I would like[5] to have said good-by to my father.

[1] future. [2] *à*. [3] imperfect. [4] *partir*. [5] past conditional. [6] pluperfect. [7] omit this word. [8] past indefinite. [9] present conditional. [10] present subjunctive. [11] plural. [12] *tous les malheureux*. [13] for the construction, see remark (3). [14] present indicative of *vouloir*. [15] put adverbs or adverbial phrases directly after the verb. [16] *de*. [17] *remettre*. [18] *emmener;* retain the infinitive form of the verb and place the pronoun object before it. [19] *si;* the future of the verb is never used after *si*, except when it stands for 'whether,' as in this case. [20] past definite of *vouloir*. [21] *profondément ému*. [22] *pour*. [23] *aimable*. [24] construe 'may (*que*) God wish (*subjunctive present*) to assist you!'

19. USES OF THE PAST INDEFINITE, PAST DEFINITE, AND IMPERFECT.

a. Past Indefinite (Present Perfect).

Did you see my father? Yes, I saw him but I did not speak to him = **avez**-vous **vu** mon père ? Oui, je l'**ai vu**, mais je ne lui **ai** pas **parlé**. Observe that in English the interrogative and negative sentences are formed by the use of the auxiliary verb *did* and the infinitive *see*, while in the affirmative sentence, the verb is put in the simple past tense *saw*. Then, note that all three of these verbs are rendered into French by the **past indefinite** of **voir**. In translating such sentences, the student should be on his guard against falling into the natural error of using the imperfect to which he at first inclines, partly because it is a simple tense, and also because it is the first past tense usually given in the conjugation of French verbs. On the contrary, he should make it a general rule to use the past indefinite, which may be called *the great narrative tense of colloquial* or *conversational French*, though it is also found in literary style. The time of the action it describes may be definitely specified or not; it may have entirely elapsed or not; but these actions are usually of recent occurrence and may be defined as the separate and detached individual acts and doings of everyday life. This accounts for the constant use made of this tense, which the student must learn to look upon as the proper one to render ideas or describe actions which, in English, would often have to be expressed by the simple past.

It should be added that the past indefinite corresponds exactly to the English present perfect when the latter is used to express the state of vacuity that follows the finishing of an action. Ex.: *I have studied French* = **j'ai étudié** le français (*I am no longer studying it*); *she has been here* = **elle a été ici** (*she is no longer here*).

However, the past indefinite is not the equivalent of the present perfect when the latter refers to a state or action which had its beginning in the past, but still continues in the present. In this case, the French requires the present tense. Ex.: *my sister has been here three years* = ma sœur **est** ici depuis trois ans.

b. Past Definite.

The past definite, sometimes called *preterit* and also the *narrative tense*, is used to speak of actions which were both begun and completed at a definite moment of the past. It differs from the past indefinite in that the time of the action, as well as the action itself, must make no part of the present, must not be conceived of as merging into it, but the action must have reached completion at a definite moment of a past that has entirely elapsed. That is why the past definite is properly used to speak of historical events or facts, while it should not ordinarily be used in conversation and familiar correspondence, which ordinarily deal with facts or events either present or only recently past. As has been said, the past indefinite is the proper one to use in such cases, this latter being primarily a conversational tense, while the past definite is really a literary tense. Both are frequently accompanied by adverbial expressions of time; but, in the case of the past definite, they refer rather to a distant than to a recent past.

c. Imperfect or Descriptive Tense.

The underlying idea of the imperfect is the exact opposite of that of the past definite. It describes not only actions, but scenery, backgrounds, conditions, situations, mental and physical habits, traits of character, emotions, feelings, etc. These may have been begun in a historical as well as a recent past, but they must not be conceived of as having reached completion in the past. On the contrary, the chief idea of the imperfect

is one of either progression, development, or permanence, continuity for the time being in the past. The reason of the great difficulty in understanding the distinction between the use of the past definite and imperfect is the fact that, in English, no past tense exactly corresponds to either of them. The learner is confronted with new shades of expression of the past, and these shades are too varied and too delicate to be compressed within the limits of a general rule. It takes close observation in reading and constant application of a few principal rules to assimilate the foreign idea. This is possible, as there are equivalents in English for some of the uses of the imperfect. The English progressive form renders perfectly the idea of progressive action, condition, or even of certain mental processes, expressed by the French imperfect. Ex.: *we were walking* = nous marchions; *she was reclining* = elle était couchée; *I was thinking* = je pensais; *they were fancying* = ils s'imaginaient, etc. For the expression of feelings, emotions, for the description of mental traits, permanent conditions in the past, etc., the progressive form is no longer adequate, and we go back in English to the use of the simple past tense. For the expression of habits, customs, the forms 'used to,' 'would,' render the idea of the imperfect. Ex.: elle se levait de très bonne heure = *she used to rise very early;* elle venait s'asseoir auprès de moi = *she would come and sit down beside me.* But these equivalents can but faintly represent the characteristics of this tense which, with the past definite, contributes in a great measure to give the French language its clearness and precision.

Note. — As rules on the use of these very important tenses are of general application, it has not been considered necessary to supply special exercises on these subjects, the student having ample opportunity to put them to practical test in all exercises, and especially in the translation of connected English prose.

20. CONDITIONAL CONSTRUCTIONS.

A condition may be expressed: —

1. by the *present* and *future* tenses. Ex.: si vous **êtes** attentif, vous **comprendrez** = *if you are attentive, you will understand.* The action is still to take place, therefore entirely problematical.
2. by the *imperfect* and *conditional present.* Ex.: si vous **étiez** attentif, vous **comprendriez** = *if you were attentive, you would understand.* The conditional here refers to a present action and represents it negatively: it is probable that you are not attentive.
3. by the *pluperfect indicative* and *conditional past.* Ex.: si vous **aviez été** attentif, vous **auriez compris** = *if you had been attentive, you would have understood.* The action here referred to is past and therefore no longer problematical: it is certain that you have not been attentive.

The following remarks should be carefully noted: —

1. Generally speaking, the French conditional corresponds to the English. But it must be observed that the French mood is always one of real condition. Therefore, it cannot be made to translate all the meanings of such conditional and potential forms as *should, could, might.* (See chapter on Modal Verbs.) In such sentences as, *you should tell him what you said,* the verb 'should tell' is not properly translated by the conditional of **dire**, but must be rendered by the conditional of **devoir** which means *ought.*
2. In conditional sentences, 'si,' meaning *if,* must never be followed by a conditional, but always by the indicative present or imperfect, or their compounds. Ex.: si nous **venions** de plus bonne heure, seriez-vous prêt? = *if we should come earlier, would you be ready?*

3. 'Si,' expressing doubt rather than condition, and meaning *whether*, is followed by a future or conditional. Ex.: je ne sais si je le **verrai** = *I do not know whether I shall see him;* je ne savais pas si ces livres vous **conviendraient** = *I did not know whether these books would suit you.*

4. An emphatic conditional may be expressed by the conditional in both clauses. In such cases, the dependent clause is introduced by 'quand,' 'quand même,' *even if, even though*, never by 'si.' Ex.: quand même vous me **haïriez**, je ne **cesserais** de vous aimer = *even if you should hate me, I should not cease to love you.* Sometimes, the independent clause is preceded by 'que.' Ex.: il me haïrait **que** je ne **cesserais** de l'aimer = *even though he hated me, I should not cease to love him.*

5. To give force or vivacity to expression, the imperfect indicative is sometimes used instead of the past conditional. Ex.: si j'avais dit un mot, il **se donnait** (*se serait donné*) la mort = *if I had said one word, he would have killed himself;* il **tombait** (*serait tombé*), si je ne l'**eusse retenu** = *he would have fallen if I had not caught him.*

6. In formal or elegant language, the pluperfect subjunctive is frequently found in one or even both verbs of the conditional sentence. Ex.: si j'**eusse** (*avais*) été méchant comme tant d'autres, je **serais** heureux comme eux = *if I had been wicked like so many others, I should have been fortunate like them;* il est vrai, s'il **m'eût** (*avait*) cru, qu'il **n'eût** (*aurait*) point fait de vers = *it is true that, if he had taken my advice, he would not have written verses.*

7. The conditional mood is frequently found in certain sentences where the condition is understood; as, for instance, in expressing a desire: je **voudrais** apprendre l'italien = *I should like to study Italian;* sometimes also in exclamations, to express surprise: comment, vous **feriez** une

chose pareille ! = *is it possible that you would do such a thing!* or, to replace the somewhat harsh imperative by a more polite form of expression : **auriez-vous** l'obligeance de remettre cette lettre à monsieur votre père? = *would you have the kindness to hand this letter to your father?*

Exercise 36.

1. If we lived[1] on[2] hope, we should run the[3] risk of dying of hunger. 2. If the occasion presents itself, you will not neglect[4] it. 3. If you[5] sow the wind, you will reap the whirlwind. 4. If Rome had not been[6] corrupted, the Barbarians would not have conquered her. 5. If any one[7] accused your absent[8] friend, you would defend him. 6. I should be very ungrateful if I ever[8] forgot your kindness.[9] 7. If you employ my cousin, you may[10] repent it. 8. I should have gone to Rome with you, if you had been willing[11] to take me. 9. If we were more temperate, we should live longer. 10. If the lamb should stray[1] from the shepherd, he would become the prey of the famished[8] wolf. 11. If you do not start now, you will miss the train. 12. If no one had the superfluous,[12] every one would have the necessities of life.[13] 13. Flatterers would corrupt the best disposition.[14] 14. If we always[8] listened to the voice of our conscience, we should never[8] know[15] remorse. 15. If the heat[16] continues, the harvest will not be good.[17] 16. If the earth were[1] harder, the ploughman could not cultivate it. 17. If we ask[18] her to come, will she come? 18. If the sun were[1] suddenly[8] annihilated, everything that is on the earth would soon[8] perish. 19. You would be very proud if you should reach[1] that fine position. 20. If I see my son once more, I shall die content. 21. If you confessed[19] your faults, they would be forgiven[20] you. 22. Without a[3] guide, you would certainly have lost yourself in these mountains. 23. The woman said to the serpent, "If we eat of the fruit of this tree, we shall die." 24. If one[7] abuses them, the best things finish

by becoming insipid. 25. If you were older, you would understand better the importance of work. 26. The man who should feign one thing and[21] do another would be considered perfidious and wicked. 27. If men employed their time better,[8] they would not complain of its brevity. 28. If you should pick[1] your pears before they are perfectly ripe,[22] you would preserve them longer. 29. We do not know whether[23] my mother will go to Europe next[8] year. 30. He has invited me, but I do not know if[23] I shall accept his invitation. 31. We thought[24] that you would never[8] come. 32. I admire him now, but I do not know whether I shall continue to admire him when I shall know him better.

[1] see remark (2). [2] *de*. [3] omit this word. [4] *laisser échapper*. [5] use second person singular. [6] pluperfect. [7] *l'on*. [8] place after word modified. [9] *vos bontés*. [10] future of *pouvoir bien*. [11] pluperfect of *bien vouloir*. [12] use masculine singular of the adjective. [13] 'necessities of life' = *le nécessaire*. [14] *naturel*, m. [15] *connaître*. [16] plural. [17] *abondante*. [18] *prier* (de). [19] *convenir de*. [20] put in the active voice. [21] insert *en*. [22] *avant leur complète maturité*. [23] see remark (3). [24] imperfect.

21. THE SUBJUNCTIVE: PRINCIPAL CASES OF ITS USE.

The indicative mood presents a fact or an idea as real, actual, evident, or probable; the subjunctive presents an idea, not as real or evident of itself, but as subordinate to, or depending upon another idea expressed in the independent clause. It should be remembered that the use of the subjunctive never depends upon a *word*, but always upon some *idea* of *doubt*, *uncertainty*, *possibility* in the mind of the speaker with regard to the action in question. If this idea changes to one of certainty, reality, probability, the subjunctive is replaced by the indicative; this liability to change in the governing idea accounts for the numerous exceptions given in grammars under most cases of the use of the subjunctive. These cases are not

treated here. Whenever they occur, the reason will lie in the change from doubt to certainty expressed by the verb of the independent clause.

CASE I.

The Subjunctive depending upon Verbs and Conjunctions.

1. The subjunctive is used after all verbs and expressions of the **will**, and after everything relating to the idea of **will**; as, desire, intention, permission, entreaty, command or order (*dire, écrire, prétendre, entendre que*), consent, prohibition, requirement, etc.

2. After all verbs and expressions of the **feelings**; as, joy, regret, shame, surprise, merit, approval, dissatisfaction, fear, apprehension, anger, delight, preference, etc.

3. *a.* After all **conjunctions** which express **condition**; as, *à condition que, supposé que, au cas que, à moins que, pour peu que, si peu que, si tant est que, soit que . . . soit que.*

b. After **conjunctions** which express **fear** or **apprehension**; as, *de peur que, de crainte que*, etc.

c. After **conjunctions** expressing **purpose of the will**; as, *afin que, pour que, de façon que, de sorte que*, etc.

d. After **conjunctions** or **other words** which denote **concession**; as, *quoique, quoi que, bien que, encore que, malgré que, quel que, quelque, si . . . que, tout . . . que, qui que*, etc.

e. After **conjunctions** of **time**, when referring to actions still in the future and therefore uncertain; as, *avant que, jusqu'à ce que, en attendant que;* also, after *que*, used in the sense of *à moins que, avant que, sans que, de peur que, de crainte que.*

4. After **verbs** and **conjunctions** which express an **idea** of **doubt, negation**; as, *douter, nier, disconvenir, contester*, etc., and *non pas que, non que, ce n'est pas que, sans que, bien loin que, jamais que*, etc.

Note. — See rule for the *Sequence of the Tenses of the Subjunctive with those of the Indicative*, page 78.

Exercise 37.

1. Your friend wants[1] you to go[2] and see him. 2. I am delighted[3] that you have enjoyed[4] yourself. 3. I prefer that Mary should finish[5] her work before going out with you. 4. My sister asks that you answer her letter as soon as possible.[6] 5. Allow me to tell you the truth.[7] 6. The merchant insists[8] that this bill shall be settled immediately. 7. You deserve to be punished.[9] 8. God required[10] that Abraham should sacrifice[11] his son Isaac; but he did not allow[10] this sacrifice to be performed.[12] 9. I wish you to talk[2] less and do[13] more. 10. My mother has forbidden me to come[2] and see you. 11. I will prevent[14] his plan from succeeding.[15] 12. If you receive[16] these people in your house, I fear[14] you will regret[17] it. 13. I intend[18] that you shall obey my orders. 14. Tell Mary to wait[19] for me at my aunt's. 15. Do you want me to describe[2] to you the house that I live in? 16. I wish[20] that you may have a pleasant[21] journey. 17. I wish[22] that he would talk[11] a long time. 18. We are very happy that you should have succeeded.[4] 19. Caligula used to wish[20] that the Roman people had[11] only one[23] head. 20. Your friend is delighted[24] that you should not have forgotten[4] him. 21. I am glad that I am made to[25] study. 22. I am sorry[26] that you did not wait[4] two minutes. 23. I am surprised that he should have said[4] that. 24. I am afraid[14] this child is not truthful.[27] 25. I am sorry[28] that you should waste so much time in doing nothing.[29] 26. We were afraid[30] that you would come[11] too late. 27. Your grandmother complains that you write to her so rarely.[31] 28. The children are afraid[14] that it will rain tomorrow. 29. He can go out from time to time, but I don't want him to go out[2] every evening. 30. I tremble[14] lest your decision may have serious consequences. 31. Children would like to have education come[32] to them without trouble. 32. I am ashamed that my brother should have behaved[4] so badly toward you. 33. Wait until[33] he has answered[4] your

letter. 34. Our cousins want us to take[2] a walk with them. 35. Socrates used to ask the gods that his little house might be filled with true friends.

[1] *désirer.* [2] see remark (3) under the verb *Vouloir* in chapter on Modal Verbs. [3] *charmé.* [4] past subjunctive. [5] present subjunctive. [6] *le plus tôt possible;* place immediately after the verb. [7] construe: 'allow that I tell (*pres. subj.*) you the truth.' [8] *exiger.* [9] construe: 'that one punish (*pres. subj.*) you.' [10] past definite. [11] imperfect subjunctive. [12] *que ce sacrifice s'exécutât.* [13] *agir davantage.* [14] the negative adverb *ne* is used expletively after *empêcher* and *éviter* before a personal verb-form (*always a subjunctive*); and also after all verbs or expressions of fear or apprehension (*craindre, trembler, appréhender, avoir peur, de peur, de crainte*, etc.), when these are used affirmatively, or interrogatively without implied negation.* [15] construe: 'that his plan succeed.' [16] *accueillir.* [17] construe: 'that you of it will have some regret.' [18] *prétendre.* [19] 'that she wait' (*pres. subj.*). [20] *souhaiter.* [21] *faire un bon.* [22] *aimerais.* [23] *ne . . . qu'une seule.* [24] *se réjouir.* [25] *qu'on me . . .* [26] *désolé.* [27] 'not truthful' = *menteur.* [28] *regretter.* [29] *à ne rien faire.* [30] imperfect of *craindre;* see note 14. [31] *donnîez si rarement de vos nouvelles.* [32] construe: 'would like that instruction should come' (*imperf. subj.*) . . . [33] *que.*

Subjunctive after Conjunctions and Verbs of Negation.

Exercise 38.

1. Although Europe is smaller than America, it is much more thickly[1] populated. 2. I cannot forgive you before you have made[2] to me the confession of your faults. 3. My sister will join you next[3] week in case you are still in London. 4. Come after us to-morrow evening unless[4] it rains. 5. Yes, I will punish you until I have cured[5] you of your laziness. 6. Although it is fertile, your field needs cultivation. 7. Whatever[6] you may do, I shall always[3] be your friend. 8. Mortals, whatever[7] they may be, are equal before the law. 9. God has

* The Minister's decree makes the use of the expletive *ne* no longer obligatory in either of these cases.

made man compassionate, in order that he may be helpful. 10. I do not deny[8] that he is very eloquent. 11. Speak louder, so that everybody can hear you. 12. Before I go out, I want to give you a little money. 13. Do you doubt[8] that[9] long-continued prosperity begets negligence and pride? 14. However rare[10] real love[11] may be, it is less so than real[12] friendship. 15. Read over your lesson so that you may know it better. 16. Behave in such a way[13] that everybody will speak well[14] of you. 17. It cannot be denied[15] that the elephant's trunk has several advantages over the human[16] hand. 18. I will stay here until he comes back. 19. I have given you a good education so that you may be happy. 20. I doubt if[17] they are convinced. 21. Whatever[7] the merit[11] of a man may be, he cannot escape envy. 22. It seems to me absurd to deny[8] that there is a ruling[1] intelligence in the world. 23. Let us go home before it gets dark.[18] 24. The moon is the smallest of the planets, although it[19] appears the largest.[20] 25. Don't talk so loud for fear that[21] somebody will hear you. 26. Arrange it so that[22] I can see her. 27. You will have this house provided you pay the worth of it. 28. She will remain faithful to me until I can marry her. 29. Far from being[2] lazy, this boy is working well. 30. Suppose he consents to your proposition, what advantage will you get[23] from it? 31. I do not doubt[8] that your perseverance will overcome[24] all obstacles. 32. Do not start without hearing[2] from me. 33. I have promised to explain his reasons to you, not that[25] I believe one word of what he says.

[1] omit this word. [2] present subjunctive. [3] place after word modified. [4] *ne* is used expletively after *à moins que* (unless), or *que* used for *à moins que*.* [5] past subjunctive. [6] use pronoun form. [7] use adjective form. [8] words or expressions of 'doubt' or 'denial,' if used negatively (or *interrogatively* with *implied negation*), require *ne* before the following or dependent verb; * observe that they do not require *ne* if used affirmatively

* The recent decree allows the omission of *ne* in this case.

(or *interrogatively* with *implied affirmation*). [9] insert *une;* 'long, continued' = *longue.* [10] insert *que.* [11] reverse positions of subject and predicate. [12] *véritable.* [13] *de telle sorte que.* [14] *dire du bien;* see *a* of rule for sequence of tenses, page 78. [15] *on ne peut disconvenir;* see note 8. [16] 'the hand of man.' [17] *que.* [18] *faire nuit.* [19] insert 'to us.' [20] *grosse.* [21] see note 14 under Exercise 37. [22] *faites en sorte que.* [23] *retirer.* [24] *vaincre.* [25] *non pas que.*

Case II.

The Subjunctive depending upon Impersonal Constructions.

1. Impersonal verbs or constructions which express **reality, certainty,** or **probability** govern the indicative. Ex.: *il est certain, évident, positif, hors de doute que; il est clair, établi, prouvé, remarquable, incontestable que; il est probable, vraisemblable, naturel que; il s'ensuit que, il résulte que, il arrive que,* etc.

When these are used *negatively* or *interrogatively,* they no longer express **certainty,** and consequently govern the subjunctive.

2. Impersonal verbs or constructions which express **possibility, necessity, appreciation, negation, restriction,** or **any other similar idea,** govern the subjunctive. Examples: —

Possibility (or **with an element of negation**): *il est possible, il se peut que, il est impossible, il est douteux, rare, difficile que, il est faux, il est singulier que,* etc.

Necessity: *il faut, il est nécessaire, il est urgent, il est indispensable que, il importe,* etc.

Appreciation or **sentiment**: *il est bon, il est mauvais, il est juste que, il est heureux, malheureux, préférable que, il convient, il vaut mieux que, il est triste, il est étonnant que, il est inutile que,* etc.

Also the following, which are equivalent to impersonal constructions: *c'est assez que, c'est beaucoup que, c'est peu que, c'est dommage* (a pity) *que,* etc.

Note. — *Il semble* and *il paraît que*, expressing **possibility only**, govern the subjunctive, but when preceded by a personal pronoun object, as *il me semble*, *il me paraît*, they express a **thought**, and govern the indicative.

Exercise 39.

1. It[1] is probable that my cousin is at home, but it is not probable that he will have[2] time to see you. 2. It often[3] happens that one is deceived. 3. We must[4] have finished[5] this work this evening. 4. It is evident that your father is very proud of you. 5. It is beyond doubt that this man is guilty. 6. It is incontestable that you are a genius of the first order.[6] 7. It is singular that he should start[2] after all that he has said. 8. It is rare that an upright[3] heart is not a noble[7] heart. 9. You must[4] not forget that men do not love to admire you. 10. It seems to me that you are enjoying yourself here. 11. The result is[8] that my brother has lost his position. 12. It is a pity that the weather is not fine. 13. It is shameful that you should not know[2] how[9] to read at your age. 14. It is possible that you are gentle and kind, but you have never loved. 15. My name is little known, but it is enough for me that my friends do not forget it. 16. It is strange that you do not recognize him. 17. It is just that you should be[2] repaid all the money that you have spent for me. 18. It would be ridiculous that you should pretend[10] to[9] know everything.[11] 19. It is right[12] that children should amuse[2] themselves after work. 20. It is time that the light should reach the lowest[13] ranks of society. 21. Does it not often[3] happen that we[14] smile upon flattery while[15] despising it? 22. It is not true[16] that there are[2] savages who have[2] no idea[17] of Divinity. 23. It seems that nature has given us pride to spare us the sorrow of knowing[18] our imperfections. 24. I must[4] know what to expect.[19] 25. It is rare that a mother does not delude herself about her children. 26. These men cannot prove their innocence, but does it follow[8] that they are

guilty? 27. It is important that you should send me as soon as possible the papers that I have asked you for.[9] 28. It may be that I am richer than[20] you think. 29. Is it possible that he denies a thing so evident? 30. It is wise[21] that you should accept[2] his invitation. 31. It is proper that you should make your excuses to him. 32. It is shameful that men[22] should have[2] so many diseases, for good morals produce health. 33. It is seldom that one does not acquire prudence with age.[23] 34. It is not enough[24] that you should write him. 35. You had[25] a pretty watch; it is too bad that you have lost it. 36. It is better that you should throw up the game.[26] 37. You must[4] not be afraid of offending me.

[1] review rules for *ce* or *il* before *être*, page 25. [2] present subjunctive. [3] place after the word modified. [4] *il faut que* . . . [5] past subjunctive. [6] *rang*, m. [7] *élevé;* see note 3. [8] *il s'ensuit que.* [9] omit this word. [10] imperfect subjunctive. [11] must precede *savoir.* [12] *bon.* [13] *parvenir jusqu'aux derniers.* [14] *on.* [15] *tout en.* [16] it is not true = *il est faux.* [17] *notion*, f. [18] *connaître.* [19] *à quoi m'en tenir.* [20] in comparisons of inequality, if the verb of the principal clause is in the affirmative, *ne* is placed immediately before the verb of the dependent clause; * but this *ne* is not required if the first verb is negative. [21] *prudent.* [22] *c'est une honte pour les hommes qu'ils* . . . [23] *les années.* [24] *il ne suffit pas.* [25] imperfect. [26] *quitter la partie.*

CASE III.

The Subjunctive in Relative Clauses.

1. When the dependent clause is introduced by the **relative** pronouns **qui, que, dont, où**, the indicative mood is used if the verb of the independent clause expresses something that is **certain, positive**, or **actual**; the subjunctive is used if the action or state expressed by the verb, represents something **still uncertain, not yet found or discovered**, or **the existence of which is even doubtful.** Compare the following sentences: je **cherche** un lieu **où je sois** tranquille; **j'ai trouvé** un lieu **où je suis** tranquille.

* In this case also, the recent decree tolerates the omission of *ne.*

The first sentence states that I am looking for a place where I shall be quiet, but I do not know if I shall find it, if it exists. The second states that such a place exists, for I have found it. Following are similar examples: indiquez-moi une personne **qui connaisse** cette affaire; indiquez-moi une personne **qui connaît** cette affaire. J'habiterai une maison **qui soit** au bord de l'eau; j'habiterai une maison **qui est** au bord de l'eau.

2. When the relative clause depends upon an expression of **restriction, negation,** or an **interrogation equivalent to a negation,** the verb of the relative clause is put in the subjunctive. Examples: —

Restriction = il y a **peu** d'hommes **qui sachent** sacrifier leurs intérêts.

Negation = il n'y **a plus** personne **qui sache** l'histoire.

Interrogation equivalent to negation = y a-t-il un homme **qui puisse** dire qu'il est toujours heureux?

3. The verb of the relative clause is also put in the subjunctive when that clause depends upon **an adjective in the superlative degree,** or **upon such expressions** as, *le seul, l'unique, le premier, le dernier.* Ex.: Le fils de Napoléon III est **le plus joli** enfant **que j'aie** jamais **vu**; vous êtes **la première** personne **qui m'ait parlé** de cette affaire. Such absolute, general, or emphatic statements may not be strictly true. Their excessive affirmation is counterbalanced by the use of the subjunctive, in which there is always an element of negation.

Exercise 40.

1. Show me a road that leads to her village. 2. I am looking for a house that will suit[1] my wife. 3. Choose a place where you will be comfortable.[2] 4. I want a horse that I can drive myself. 5. There was need of[3] a man who knew[4] the spirit of the nation. 6. There is no one who has not some motive for sorrow.[5] 7. It is only[6] genius that can[7] reach the

sublime. 8. If I lived in the country, I should want an apartment from which[8] I could[9] take in[10] a vast horizon. 9. Show me the palace that belongs to the King[11] of Italy. 10. Do not marry a man who is much older than you. 11. The movements of the stars are the most regular that we know.[4] 12. Innocent[12] pleasures are the only ones[7] that are not[13] followed by[14] some bitterness. 13. There is no one in[15] the world who has as much need of help as I have.[16] 14. There are few kings who know how[7] to govern. 15. I have need of a society that I can love. 16. The least that you can do is[17] to[14] offer an indemnity for the damage that you have caused. 17. Sincerity is the most important quality that one should[18] look for in a story. 18. Nothing proves that this man is guilty. 19. Always[12] use a language that is simple and clear. 20. There are few people who are satisfied with their lot. 21. Education[19] is the only blessing that fortune cannot[13] take from us.[20] 22. There is not a[14] poet who has not[13] drawn all his philosophy from the ancients. 23. Reason is the most precious[12] gift that God has made to man. 24. Formerly, the Venetians were the only ones[7] who manufactured[9] and sold[9] mirrors. 25. The most beautiful things that an author can put in his books, are the sentiments that come to him from his youth. 26. Is there a man who can satisfy everybody? 27. There is no[21] man that fortune does not[13] come to visit once in his life. 28. Do not say anything that can depress those who are listening to you. 29. The temple of Solomon was[22] the first that men consecrated[23] to the true[24] God. 30. I would like to live in a country whose climate was[1] mild. 31. There is no[21] disguise that can long hide love where it exists,[22] nor feign it where it does[22] not. 32. That is[25] the best wine that I ever drank.[23] 33. Sainte-Beuve is assuredly one of the most agreeable talkers that I have heard. 34. She is the last woman that I should want[9] to have for a[7] friend. 35. Man is a strange animal; I am not the first one[7] who has said so.[26]

36. I am the only friend that has remained faithful to you. 37. Rossini was one of the wittiest[12] men that I have ever[7] seen. 38. There is not a single people of antiquity that did not make human sacrifices.[27]

[1] present subjunctive. [2] *à votre aise.* [3] *il fallait.* [4] *connaître;* what tense? [5] *d'affliction.* [6] *il n'y a que.* [7] omit this word. [8] *d'où.* [9] imperfect subjunctive. [10] *embrasser.* [11] no capital. [12] place after word modified. [13] use *ne* but not *pas.* [14] *de.* [15] *à.* [16] must be preceded by *en.* [17] *c'est.* [18] *devoir.* [19] *instruction,* f. [20] *nous ravir.* [21] *ne . . . point.* [22] *est.* [23] past subjunctive. [24] *véritable;* see note 12. [25] *voilà bien.* [26] *l'.* [27] turn; 'that did not sacrifice (*past subj.*) some victims human.'

Case IV.

The Subjunctive in Negative or Interrogative Sentences.

1. Verbs of **thought** or of **expression** like *croire, penser, espérer, compter, savoir, connaître, dire, s'imaginer, supposer, déclarer, assurer, affirmer, soutenir,* etc., and also **impersonal constructions** like *il est vrai, il est clair, il est certain* govern the indicative when used **affirmatively.**

They also govern the indicative when used **negatively,** if there is no uncertainty in the mind of the person speaking concerning the reality or actuality of the action or fact in question. If there is such doubt, the subjunctive should be used. Notice the great difference in meaning in the following sentences: mon ami **ne sait pas** que son père **est** malade (= *his father is ill; I know it, but he does not*); mon ami **ne sait pas** que son père **soit** malade (= *my friend does not know whether or not his father is ill, and neither do I*).

2. When *croire, penser, savoir,* etc., are used **interrogatively,** the idea of doubt or certainty in the mind of the speaker is again clearly indicated by the use of the subjunctive or indicative in the second verb. Ex.: **savez-vous** que cet enfant **fait**

des progrès? (= *this child is improving; do you know it?*); **savez-vous** que cet enfant **fasse** des progrès? (= *I do not know if this child is improving; could you tell me if he is?*).

Exercise 41.

1. You believe that this man is your friend, but I do not believe that he is.[1] 2. He has gone to[2] South America, but I do not think that he will make a[3] fortune there. 3. Is it true that your friend has written a beautiful novel? 4. This child does not always[4] tell the truth, but is it certain that he is deceiving you in this? 5. Mary declares that our uncle is rich, but I do not think he is.[1] 6. You imagine that I am happy; no one else[3] here thinks that I am.[1] 7. I do not even[4] hope that you will consent[5] to my proposition. 8. My mother expects[6] that we shall wait for her a little while, but she does not expect that we shall wait[5] two hours. 9. Do not believe that happiness depends upon riches. 10. What makes you think that we had a good time?[7] 11. Your teacher says that you are often absent;[8] is it true that you are?[5] 12. Do you think that it is necessary[10] to believe all that the masses[11] say? 13. I do not believe that you are wrong, but I cannot[12] affirm that you are right. 14. I have never noticed that you were[13] sad. 15. I do not imagine that you are a bad woman. 16. Do you know that your mother has arrived? 17. Do not believe that you inspire[14] me with[3] the least envy. 18. Is it true that I have only twenty-three years to live? 19. I do not think that I can go to see you tomorrow. 20. We did not know[15] that it would be necessary[10] to take that journey. 21. Do you believe that the soul is immortal? 22. Don't you know that two and two make four? 23. I do not insist that the[16] man is my friend. 24. I do not believe that God is cruel. 25. I shall never[4] believe that you have forgotten me. 26. "You are ignorant fellows!"[17] cried the Greek; "do you not know that Chaos

is the[3] father of all?" 27. I do not expect[6] that the war will be[5] long. 28. My cousin does not yet[4] know that her mother is dead.

[1] must be preceded by *le* (so). [2] *partir pour*. [3] omit this word. [4] place after the word modified. [5] present subjunctive. [6] *compter*. [7] past subjunctive of *s'amuser*. [8] 'are absent' = *s'absenter*. [9] turn: 'that you absent yourself thus.' [10] *falloir*. [11] *la foule;* place after the predicate, which must be in the singular. [12] use *ne* but not *pas*. [13] imperfect subjunctive. [14] *faire*. [15] indicative imperfect. [16] *cet*. [17] *des ignorants*.

22. MINOR CASES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

a. When the dependent clause beginning with **que**, precedes the independent clause, the verb is always put in the subjunctive. Ex.: **que** vous **soyez** condamné ou non, l'opinion public sera contre vous.

b. In such sentences as: '**Puissiez**-vous réussir!' 'Qu'il **vienne**!' 'Que la victoire vous **soit** favorable!' '**Vive** le roi!' etc., the subjunctive verb depends upon a verb of desire or wish understood, thus: '*je souhaite* (désire) que vous **puissiez** réussir,' etc.

c. **Savoir** is the only verb of the language which can be used independently in the subjunctive, and then only in the first person singular, negatively. Ex.: je ne **sache** pas qu'il **soit** mon ami. This implies stronger negation than 'je ne **sais** pas qu'il **soit** mon ami.'

Que je sache, from the Latin '*quod sciam*,' is used for **je ne pense pas que je** (*le*) **sache**. Ex.: est-ce que Marie est sortie? Non pas **que je sache**.

d. The subjunctive is also found in the cry of sentinels: '**Qui vive?**' This is not properly a subjunctive, but is probably borrowed from the Italian '*Chi vive?*'

e. The conjunction **si** governs the indicative, but in dependent clauses, that conjunction is replaced by **que**; in such cases, the subjunctive and not the indicative must be used. Ex.:

Mary Mackay

s'il fait beau et **que** nous **ayons** le temps, nous sortirons, *instead of* s'il fait beau et **si** nous **avons** le temps.

Exercise 42.

1. Whether it rains[1] or not,[2] I will expect you to-morrow. 2. Whether he comes[1] to-morrow or next week, it makes no difference to me.[3] 3. May[4] you be as happy as you deserve to be![5] 4. May we always[6] be friends! 5. If he wants to see me in private, let him come[4] early to-morrow morning. 6. May[4] peace be with you! May God protect you! 7. God grant[7] that my presentiment may not be fulfilled![8] 8. God be praised for[9] the good news[10] that you bring me. 9. No one has come yet[11] that I know of.[12] 10. Let[4] hatred and resentment die promptly in your heart! 11. May God reward you for[9] your generosity! 12. I do not know[12] that there are men wholly bad or wholly good. 13. Long live the Republic! God bless the Queen! 14. God preserve us from another[13] war! 15. Perish[4] the traitor who has caused[14] our defeat! 16. Let him do what he likes![15] 17. If he wants me to believe him, let him tell the truth. 18. I do not know[12] anything[16] more beautiful.

[1] see *a* under Minor Cases of the Subjunctive. [2] *faire beau.* [3] *cela m'est égal.* [4] see *b.* [5] must be preceded by *le* (so). [6] place after word modified. [7] present subjunctive of *vouloir.* [8] *se réaliser.* [9] *de.* [10] singular. [11] place between auxiliary and participle. [12] see *c.* [13] *d'une nouvelle.* [14] *est cause de.* [15] future of *plaire,* preceded by *lui.* [16] insert *de.*

23. SEQUENCE OF TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH THOSE OF THE INDICATIVE.

a. When the verb of the independent clause is a *present, future,* or *imperative,* the verb of the dependent clause is put in the **present subjunctive** when one is speaking of a present or future action, and in the **past subjunctive** to speak of a past

action. Ex.: je ne **crois** pas qu'il **ait** tort = *I do not believe that he is wrong;* je ne **crois** pas qu'il **ait eu** tort = *I do not believe that he was wrong.*

b. When the verb of the independent clause is in one of the tenses of the *past* or in the *conditional,* the verb of the dependent clause is put in the **imperfect subjunctive** to speak of a present or future action,* and in the **pluperfect subjunctive,** to speak of a past action. Ex.: je **craignais** que vous ne **partissiez** trop tard (*aujourd'hui,* ou *demain*) = *I was afraid that you might start too late;* je **craignais** que vous ne **fussiez parti** trop tard (*hier, la semaine dernière*) = *I was afraid that you had started too late.*

24. PRINCIPAL CASES OF THE AGREEMENT OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

Case I. The Past Participle used **without the Auxiliary.**
Case II. The Past Participle used with **Être.**
Case III. The Past Participle used with **Avoir.**
Case IV. The Past Participle of **Reflexive Verbs.**

Rule for Case I.

The past participle used without the auxiliary agrees, like the adjective, in gender and number with the noun or pronoun to which it relates. Ex.: un fils **aimé**; une fille **aimée** = *a loved son; a loved daughter.*

Rule for Case II.

The past participle is found with **être** in two cases: —

a. In the compound tenses of passive verbs: **être aimé**; **être puni** = *to be loved; to be punished.*

* The ministerial decree allows the use of the present, instead of the imperfect subjunctive, when the verb of the independent clause is in the conditional.

b. In the compound tenses of certain neuter verbs of motion, like **aller, venir, entrer,** etc.

In both of these cases, the past participle agrees with the subject of the verb.

Rule for Case III.

The past participle used with **avoir,** agrees in gender and number with the direct object if that object precedes the verb.*

It does not agree

a. If the object is indirect.

b. If it follows the verb.

c. The past participles of all neuter verbs conjugated with **avoir** will always be invariable, since these verbs can take no object.

Rule for Case IV.

When found in the compound tenses of reflexive verbs, the auxiliary **être** has the meaning of **avoir**; thus, *je me suis consolé* stands for **j'ai consolé moi.** Therefore, the participles of these verbs come under the third case, that is to say, they agree in gender and number with the direct object if it precedes the verb.* They do not agree

a. If there is no direct object.

b. If the direct object follows the verb.

Ex.: ma sœur et ma cousine **se sont écrit** (*ont écrit à elles*). The verb has no direct object; hence, no agreement. Ma sœur et ma cousine **se sont écrit des lettres.** The object follows the verb; hence, no agreement. Voici les lettres *que* ma sœur et ma cousine **se sont écrites. Que** stands for **lettres,** direct object preceding the verb; hence, agreement.

* The recent decree stating that the past participle of verbs conjugated with *avoir,* and the past participle of *reflexive verbs* may hereafter remain invariable in all cases where it is at present customary to make them agree, has since been nullified by the French Academy

Note. — Minor and exceptional cases of the agreement of the past participle abound in advanced grammars, to which the pupil is referred for further study of this difficult subject. The rules given above will be found sufficient to meet the needs of elementary composition.

Exercise 43.

CASES I. AND II. OF THE PARTICIPLE.

1. A lie covered by another lie,[1] is a stain replaced by a hole. 2. One never[2] regrets the hours[3] devoted to study. 3. An obstacle[4] surmounted, increases pleasure. 4. A hundred years passed in idleness are not worth one hour well employed. 5. These fruits turned[5] red when they began[6] to ripen. 6. All sins entered[6] the world through[7] intemperance. 7. Nature presents to us successively skies[8] strewn with stars, and skies[8] covered with clouds, prairies dotted with flowers, forests stripped by[9] frosts, and fields golden with[7] the harvests. 8. Repelled by fortune, men throw themselves back upon hope. 9. Few persons are endowed with a pure[2] and delicate[2] taste. 10. Animals and plants were[10] adored[11] in Egypt. 11. A beautiful thought well expressed, pleases in[12] all ages.[13] 12. My sister has come to spend the winter in Italy. 13. The earth is fertilized by the sun. 14. Eloquence was[14] born before the rules of rhetoric. 15. Voltaire and Rousseau died[6] the same year. 16. Cherries were[15] brought from Asia to Rome by Lucullus. 17. Good news are always well received.[16] 18. Noses were[6] invented before spectacles. 19. These children are spoiled by everybody. 20. Since the invention of powder, battles have become less bloody. 21. The Scotch are attached to their country; they love their mountains with their summits covered with snow. 22. Paper, window-glass, and chimneys were unknown to the[17] Romans. 23. Our most sumptuous monuments will be effaced by time. 24. The natural[2] qualities of the horse are perfected by education. 25. Men seem born for society. 26. France has been governed by three

races of kings. 27. This letter will be handed to you by my brother-in-law. 28. Virtue excepted, one may sacrifice everything[13] to friendship. 29. The French language is spoken in Europe by all educated[19] men. 30. Children open their[20] eyes as soon as they are born. 31. We shall be judged according to our works. 32. The French were[6] sooner civilized than the other peoples of Europe. 33. They are delighted with everything.

[1] insert *c'*. [2] place after word modified. [3] *moment*, m. [4] *la peine*. [5] past indefinite of *devenir*. [6] past indefinite. [7] *par*. [8] *des nuits*, f. pl. [9] insert *les*. [10] imperfect. [11] when a participle refers to two or more nouns, some of which are masculine and others feminine, it agrees in the masculine plural. [12] *dans*. [13] *temps*, m. pl. [14] present. [15] past definite. [16] *accueillir*. [17] turn; 'were (*imperfect*) not known of the'; see also note 11. [18] must precede its verb. [19] *éclairé*; place after the noun. [20] *les*.

Exercise 44.

CASES III. AND IV. OF THE PARTICIPLE.

1. Force has never persuaded any one.[1] 2. The roses that we picked[2] this morning are already faded. 3. It was[3] not chance that created[2] us. 4. All nations have conceived the idea of God. 5. Among[4] the Egyptians, a son was obliged to continue in[5] the profession that his father had exercised.[6] 6. Many who went to sleep[7] rich, have awakened poor. 7. Contrary[8] winds[9] have conducted us to[10] your isle. 8. Colbert repaired[11] the evils which a stormy[8] reign had caused.[6] 9. Preserve preciously the friends that you have made. 10. Tell[12] me the story that you have related to her. 11. The judges declared[13] themselves in[14] his favor. 12. They had imagined[15] that we had deceived[7] them. 13. The Greeks made themselves illustrious[16] in the arts. 14. The admiration which certain[17] scholars have professed for the ancients, has often degenerated into[14] fanaticism. 15. I have not received any of the letters that you have written me. 16. At Rome, the censors corrected[18] the abuses which the law had not foreseen. 17. Charlemagne was[3]

the first of the French kings who founded[19] schools. 18. He often[8] visited the schools that he had founded. 19. We have not written to each other.[20] 20. Switzerland is not such as it has been described by most travellers.[21] 21. It is easy to be indulgent toward[22] the ingratitude of men when one has not experienced it. 22. This cathedral has made the reputation of the architect who built[2] it. 23. Turenne is one of the greatest generals that France has had.[19] 24. The battle of Wagram is one of the greatest that Napoleon has fought.[19] 25. The ancients imagined[15] that the earth was[3] motionless. 26. Hearts[9] less brave would have become discouraged[23] before so many obstacles to overcome. 27. The advice[24] that your friend gave you was good; why did you not follow it? 28. She showed[11] us the laces and jewels that her old aunt had bequeathed[25] to her. 29. How many governments have succeeded one another[26] in France in the course of[27] one century!

[1] this sentence should contain three negative words. [2] past indefinite. [3] present. [4] *chez*. [5] omit this word. [6] reverse the positions of the subject and predicate, thus: 'that had exercised (*pluperfect*) his father'; this order is frequently found in French relative clauses. [7] pluperfect. [8] place after the word modified. [9] must be preceded by *des*. [10] *dans*. [11] past definite. [12] *raconter*. [13] past indefinite of *se prononcer*. [14] *en*. [15] pluperfect of *se figurer* or *s'imaginer*, observe that *se* is here an indirect object. [16] past indefinite of *s'illustrer*. [17] *quelques*. [18] imperfect. [19] past subjunctive. [20] replace 'each other' by the reflexive pronoun *nous* which here has a reciprocal meaning. [21] turn: 'as (*que*) most travellers have described it.' [22] *pour*. [23] *se décourager*. [24] plural. [25] pluperfect; for word order, see note 6. [26] *se*, which here stands for an indirect object. [27] 'in the course of' = *depuis*.

PART II.

EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION.

EASY PROSE COMPOSITION.

1. THE CHILDHOOD OF DUGUESCLIN.

Note.—In this, and in following exercises, the student should be required to give reasons for the use of the past definite or imperfect tenses.

Duguesclin, son of a poor[1] Breton[2] lord, was born[3] in[4] 1320, in a castle situated near Dinan. He was[5] a very ugly[6] child. He had[7] a pug nose and green eyes;[8] he was[7] very short,[1] with[9] broad shoulders and long arms; but he showed[3] early that he would be very brave. When he played[7] with the children of his age, it was always games of war that he preferred;[10] and when he was[11] fifteen years old,[12] there was[7] not in all[13] Brittany a knight capable of competing[14] with him.

It was[15] at the age of fifteen[16] that Duguesclin began[3] to serve in the armies; he soon[17] became[3] a good captain. He was[7] not only brave, but[12] he was also very clever. The dauphin Charles, who was very fond of him,[18] put[3] him at the head of a little army, and charged[3] him to fight Charles the Bad, who possessed[7] several cities and castles in[4] Normandy, and who was[7] the ally of the English.

---

[1] *petit.* [2] use small letter, and place after the noun. [3] past definite. [4] *en.* [5] *c'était.* [6] place 'very ugly' after the noun. [7] imperfect. [8] turn: 'the nose pug and the eyes green.' [9] insert *de.* [10] it was . . . preferred; *c'était toujours à la guerre.* [11] past definite of *avoir.* [12] omit this word. [13] insert *la.* [14] *de se mesurer.* [15] *c'est.* [16] insert *ans.* [17] place after the word modified. [18] who was . . . him; *qui l'aimait beaucoup.*

A few days after the accession to the throne[1] of Charles, Duguesclin beat[2] Charles the Bad at Cocherel, near[3] Évereux, and thus began the new reign by a brilliant victory.[4]

2. DUGUESCLIN AND THE "FREE[5] COMPANIES."

In those days,[6] the king of France had[7] soldiers whom he paid, and who served in[8] companies under the orders of captains. These soldiers were, for the most part, Italians,[9] Swiss, Germans, etc. They made[10] war to earn the pay that was given them,[11] but also to enrich themselves by pillage.[12] They were[13] brigands who robbed and massacred the peasants of France, and these unfortunates dreaded the soldiers of their king as much as those of the king of England.

As Charles V., at the beginning[14] of his reign, was[15] at[16] peace with the English, he wished[2] to rid himself of the "companies," and he commanded[2] Duguesclin to take them to[16] Spain. Duguesclin went to[17] their principal chiefs, who were[15] at Chalon-sur-Saône. He knew[15] them all, for he had already fought against them or with them. He was[2] received very joyously, and drank[2] with them the best wines of Burgundy. He promised[2] them large[18] sums of money, if they would[19] follow him in the country where he wished[19] to lead them, and they followed[2] him to[16] Spain.

---

[1] accession . . . throne; *l'avènement.* [2] past definite. [3] *auprès de.* [4] and thus . . . victory; *et étrenna par cette victoire le nouveau règne.* [5] *Grandes.* [6] *dans ce temps-là.* [7] all verbs in this paragraph, excepting the infinitives, must be in the imperfect, because they denote habit or custom in the past. [8] *par.* [9] put *des* before each one of these proper nouns. [10] insert definite article. [11] put in the active voice, thus: 'that one gave (*imperfect*) them.' [12] *en pillant.* [13] *c'étaient des.* [14] *au début.* [15] imperfect. [16] *en.* [17] went to; *alla trouver.* [18] *de grosses.* [19] imperfect of *vouloir.*

3. DUGUESCLIN A[1] PRISONER IN SPAIN.

Spain was[2] then divided into[3] several kingdoms, among which was[2] that of Castile. Peter the Cruel, friend of the English, was reigning in[3] Castile at this time.[4] His brother Henry, the[1] friend of[5] France, had rebelled[6] against him. Duguesclin, with the companies, drove[7] Peter away from[5] Castile, and Henry became king in[8] his place.

But the Prince[9] of Wales arrived[7] with an army to drive away Henry. He was[7] victorious, and Duguesclin was[7] made prisoner. The Prince of Wales, happy to have[10] in[3] his power the best general of the king of France, conducted[7] him to Bordeaux. One day, the prince met[7] Duguesclin in the[11] street. "How are[12] you, Bertrand?" said[13] he to him. "I am[12] very well,[14] my lord, and[1] very[1] pleased,"[1] replied Duguesclin, "for they say[15] that I am the greatest[16] knight in[17] the world, since you will[18] not permit me to ransom myself." It was[2] the custom in those days,[4] to set a prisoner free[19] when he had paid his ransom; and Duguesclin was insinuating[20] to the Prince of Wales that he was[2] afraid of him, since he did not permit[2] him to redeem himself and[17] return to the[21] king of France. The Prince of Wales was[7] piqued by this remark.[22] "Fix your own ransom,"[23] said he to Duguesclin, who fixed[7] it at a[1] hundred thousand livres. It was,[2] for the time, an enormous[24] sum. "Where will you get[25] this money?" asked the Prince of

---

[1] omit this word. [2] use imperfect, because this tense describes states, conditions, sentiments, or characteristics in the past, considered permanent for the time being. [3] *en.* [4] *à cette époque.* [5] insert definite article. [6] *était révolté.* [7] past definite. [8] *fut roi à.* [9] do not use capital. [10] *de tenir.* [11] *une.* [12] present of *aller.* [13] past definite of *demander.* [14] very well; *à merveille.* [15] *on dit.* [16] *premier.* [17] *de.* [18] present of *vouloir.* [19] to set . . . free; *qu'un prisonnier fût remis en liberté.* [20] *semblait dire.* [21] *auprès du.* [22] *parole,* f. [23] Fix . . . ransom; *fixez vous-même votre rançon.* [24] place after the noun. [25] future of *prendre.*

Wales. And Duguesclin, who knew[1] that he was loved[2] in every hut in[3] France, replied: "There is not a spinner in France who would not[4] spin a distaff full to pay my ransom."

4. DUGUESCLIN A[5] CONSTABLE OF FRANCE.

Duguesclin, once more[6] free, returned[7] to[8] Spain, where
5 he defeated Peter the Cruel; then he came back to[8] France, where war was beginning again with the English. Charles V. gave him the sword of a[5] Constable. It was[9] a great honor,[10] for the dignity of Constable was[9] one of the highest[11] of the kingdom of France. Duguesclin, who was[9] modest, did not
10 wish[9] to accept this honor, saying that he was[9] not of sufficiently high nobility[12] to command the princes and all the nobles who were[9] in the army;[13] but Charles V. answered him that everybody, even the princes, would obey[14] him.

He was called[15] "the good Constable." The people[14]
15 loved[9] him because he was brave and because he was good. He forbade[9] his soldiers to do any harm[16] to the weak[13] and to those who could[9] not defend themselves, like the churchmen, the women, the children, and the poor people.[14]

When he died,[7] he was buried[18] at Saint-Denis, near Paris,
20 by the side of the[17] tombs of the kings of France.

---

[1] imperfect of *savoir*, because the verb refers to a fact, not a person. [2] put in the active voice, thus: 'that one loved (*imperfect*) him,' etc [3] *de*. [4] *ne voudrait;* omit *pas*. [5] omit this word. [6] once more; *devenu*. [7] use past definite, which describes distinct and separate acts occurring at a definite moment in the past. [8] *en*. [9] see page 89, footnote 2. [10] add *qu'il lui faisait*. [11] *élevées*. [12] of . . . nobility; *de noblesse assez haute*. [13] put in the plural. [14] put in the singular. [15] put in the active voice, thus: 'one called (*imperfect*) him.' [16] *de faire du mal*. [17] *auprès des*.

5. EXPLOITS OF[1] CHEVALIER BAYARD.

Bayard was born[2] at the Château of Bayard, near Grenoble. From his[3] childhood, he prepared himself for a military career;[4] for, in[5] the castle where he spent his earliest[6] years, he heard[7] unceasingly of the exploits of his ancestors, who had fought in[5] the service of the kings of France. When he had reached[8] his thirteenth year, his parents sent him to the[9] Duke[10] of Savoy, who admitted him to the number of his pages.

Six months later,[11] the duke took him to Lyons, where Charles VIII. was,[12] to whom some one[13] spoke of the young page as the[14] boldest rider that any one had ever seen.[15] The king asked the Duke[10] of Savoy to give him this page, who promised[16] to become a good knight. The duke consented to it; and it was[17] thus that Bayard entered[5] the service of France.

At the age of eighteen, Bayard made his first campaign[18] in Italy, when Charles VIII. went[19] there in 1494. He stayed there during all the reign of Louis XII., and his exploits became celebrated in the entire[20] world.

In the interval of battles, he loved[16] to go on little[21] expeditions in search of the enemy. Being within[5] a few leagues of Milan, then occupied by Ludovic Sforza, the enemy of Louis XII., he started one fine morning, with

---

[1] *du.* [2] in this historical narrative, translate every English verb that is in a simple past tense and is a real predicate, by the past definite, unless otherwise indicated in these notes. [3] *dès l'.* [4] he prepared . . . career; *il se destina au métier des armes.* [5] *à.* [6] *premières.* [7] he heard; *il entendait parler.* [8] past anterior of *atteindre.* [9] *auprès du.* [10] do not use capital. [11] *après.* [12] reverse the positions of the subject and predicate, thus: 'where was (*imperfect*) Charles VIII.' [13] *l'on.* [14] as the; *comme du.* [15] any one . . . seen; *qu'on eût jamais vu.* [16] imperfect. [17] *c'est.* [18] his first campaign; *ses premières armes.* [19] *se rendre.* [20] place after the word modified. [21] to go on little; *à faire de petites.*

fifty cavaliers, to[1] attack three hundred, who were[2] encamped in front of[3] the city.

The combat was a[4] very hard one,[4] but Bayard cried:[5] "Courage, friends![6] Let us redouble our[7] blows." And to the cries of "France! France!" the little troop put the enemy to flight.[8] The Frenchmen pursued them, and stopped only[9] at the gates of Milan; but Bayard did not stop. He entered[10] the city at a[7] gallop, still[11] pursuing the cavaliers, and he arrived thus at the very gates[12] of Ludovic Sforza's palace, where he was made prisoner.

Ludovic had so much admiration for his courage that he set him at[13] liberty, without asking[14] him any[15] ransom.

During the battle of Marignan, Bayard fought like a hero. The evening of the first day, he found himself[2] in the midst of the enemy,[16] in great danger of being[14] taken or killed. He descended from his horse, and began to[17] creep on his[7] hands and[18] feet, until he arrived[19] in the midst of the French.

At the end of the battle, Francis I. sent for[20] Bayard, and told him that he wished to be knighted[21] by him. Bayard could[2] not[22] believe that the king wished[19] to do him such an honor.

"Sire," said he to him, "you are the king of so noble a[23] kingdom; crowned and consecrated, you are knight above all[24] other knights." "Friend,[6]" answered the king, "make

---

[1] to; *pour en.* [2] imperfect. [3] in front of; *en avant de.* [4] omit this word. [5] *disait.* [6] this word must be preceded by possessive adjective. [7] definite article. [8] put . . . flight; *força les cavaliers ennemis à s'enfuir.* [9] *ne . . . que.* [10] insert *dans.* [11] place after word modified. [12] at . . . gates; *jusqu'aux portes.* [13] he set him at; *le fit remettre en.* [14] remember that all prepositions except *en* govern the infinitive. [15] *de.* [16] use the plural form. [17] *se mettre à.* [18] repeat preposition and article. [19] imperfect subjunctive. [20] *faire chercher.* [21] that . . . knighted; *qu'il voulait être armé chevalier.* [22] use *ne*, but omit *pas.* [23] say *un si . . .* [24] *par dessus tous les.*

haste and do my command." Then, Bayard performed[1] the ceremony as it was usually performed.[2] He touched the king on[3] the shoulder three times with his sword, and told him that he dubbed him knight.[4]

Then, he kissed his sword, lifted it in the[5] air, and exclaimed: "Surely, good sword,[6] thou shalt be honored above[7] all others, thou that hast given knighthood to so handsome and so powerful a[8] king!"

6. ANECDOTES ABOUT[9] LOUIS XI.

Louis XI., who was[10] the enemy of the nobles,[11] pretended[12] to love the poor people[13] and the burghers. At Paris, there were several burghers whom he used to call "crony,"[14] and he called their wives "gossip."[15] He often went to dine at their houses,[16] but he would punish the burghers who resisted him, quite as[17] harshly as he punished the lords. He loved solitude, and did not like to be looked at or followed[18] when he travelled. The very year of his accession, as he wanted to take a journey, he published throughout[19] the kingdom that those who should follow him would be hanged.

In the castles where he shut himself up, he loved that the few[20] companions with whom he lived, should relate[21] stories to him, and he sometimes told some himself.[22] It was[23] also

---

[1] *faire.* [2] it . . . performed; *comme on la faisait d'ordinaire.* [3] *à.* [4] that he . . . knight; *qu'il l'armait chevalier.* [5] *en l'.* [6] see page 92, footnote 6. [7] *entre.* [8] *un si beau et si puissant.* [9] *sur.* [10] past definite. [11] *grands.* [12] this verb, like all others in this selection which describe customary actions, physical habits, or mental characteristics, must be put in the imperfect; the absence of this tense in English is felt in the use of such expressions as 'would,' 'used to,' 'was in the habit,' found before the verb. [13] *gens*, m. pl. [14] *mon compère.* [15] *ma commère.* [16] *chez eux.* [17] quite as; *tout aussi.* [18] did not like . . . followed; *ne voulait pas qu'on le regardât ni qu'on le suivît.* [19] *fit publier dans tout.* [20] *rares.* [21] *contassent.* [22] and he . . . himself; *et lui-même, il en contait volontiers.* [23] *c'était.*

one of his greatest[1] pleasures to watch[2] fights of dogs and rats.

He was[3] tormented all his life by the fear of death. He believed, like all men of his time,[4] that his destiny was
5 written in the stars, and he used to consult astrologers to know it. He would pay devout people and hermits, in order that they should ask[5] God to let him live a long time. He[6] himself prayed very[6] often; he wore[7] around his hat figures in lead, of saints and virgins, before which
10 he used to kneel down. When he prayed to[6] the Virgin, he would address her as[8] "My good Lady." He thought that he could win over[9] saints, like men, by[10] giving money to their churches.

When he felt himself[3] on the point of death,[11] he had
15 brought to his bedside[12] the relics kept in[13] the Sainte-Chapelle at Paris, hoping that these relics would cure him. He also sent for[3] Saint-François de Paule, whom he implored in vain to[14] prolong his life by a miracle.

7. HENRY IV., KING OF NAVARRE.

Henry IV. was born[15] at the Château of Pau. On[6] the day
20 of his birth, the king of Navarre, his grandfather, made him[16] drink a drop of wine, in order, said he, to give him a robust constitution.[17] Henry was brought up, not as a[18] prince, but as a soldier. He lived[19] like the children of the country,[20]

---

[1] *grands.* [2] *de regarder des.* [3] past definite. [4] of his time; *de ce temps-là.* [5] imperfect subjunctive. [6] omit this word. [7] *avait.* [8] he . . . her as; *il lui disait.* [9] win over; *gagner à sa cause.* [10] *en.* [11] *de mourir.* [12] he . . . bedside; *il fit apporter auprès de son lit.* [13] *à.* [14] whom . . . in vain; *auquel il demanda inutilement de.* [15] give a reason for the use of the past definite in this and following verbs. [16] made him; *lui fit.* [17] *tempérament vigoureux*, m. [18] not as a; *non en.* [19] give a reason for the use of the imperfect in this and the following verbs. [20] *pays*, m.

ran, played, fought with them, and better than they, he climbed the trees and scaled the walls and rocks.

While he was still very young,[1] he came to the court of France. He was a[2] Protestant and took part in the civil wars. He displayed a brilliant courage.[3] He endured[4] without complaining the fatigues of war, and privations of every kind.[5]

He was[6] witty and gay, but he was serious when it was necessary to be, and he knew very well how[2] to make himself obeyed.[7] He was simple in his manners, affectionate toward all, but he had noble thoughts and felt all[2] the greatness of the country over which[8] he became king.

Sully was the childhood friend[9] of Henry IV. He called himself[6] the "special friend" of the king, but the two friends did not always get on.[10] Sully did not have[6] an even disposition. He was jealous of the affection which his master showed[11] others. Several times, he irritated[12] the king, and it was thought[13] that they would not be reconciled.[14]

Once, when they had been angry at each other some time,[15] Sully came to speak to the king on business.[16] When he had finished,[17] Henry said to him: "Have you nothing else to[18] say to me?" Sully answered that he had not.[19] "Well, I have something to say to you," replied the king.[20] Then, he had[12] with Sully a friendly con-

---

[1] while he . . . young; *de bonne heure.* [2] omit this word. [3] he displayed . . . courage; *il y montra une éclatante bravoure.* [4] imperfect. [5] plural. [6] see page 94, footnote 19. [7] put in the infinitive present. [8] of the country over which; *de cette France dont.* [9] was . . . friend; *fut le compagnon d'enfance.* [10] *ne s'entendaient pas toujours.* [11] insert *à d'.* [12] see page 94, footnote 15. [13] *l'on crut.* [14] reflexive form. [15] Once, when . . . some time; *un jour qu'ils se boudaient depuis longtemps.* [16] *d'affaires.* [17] past anterior. [18] *ne . . . rien autre à.* [19] that he had not; *que non.* [20] turn: 'I (*moi*), replied the king, (*je*) have something to say to you.'

versation,[1] and,[2] taking him by the hand, he led him toward a group of courtiers and said to them: "Gentlemen, I love Sully more than ever!"

8. THE YOUTH OF SULLY.

Sully was born in 1560, at the Château of Rosny, near Mantes, of a noble Protestant family.[3] At the age of eleven,[4] he was presented[5] to Henry, King of Navarre,[6] who was then eighteen years old. He made him a beautiful court bow, then a pretty speech, and so greatly pleased[7] the young king that he[8] kept him near his person.[9]

When Henry of Navarre came[5] to Paris to[10] wed the sister of the king, Charles IX., Sully was[11] with him. Both ran a great danger on the eve of[12] Saint Bartholomew. Henry was[11] at the Louvre. Charles IX. sent for him[13] and[14] threatened to have[15] him killed, if he did not become[16] a[17] Catholic. "Death or the mass," said he to him, furiously.[18] Henry did not want to die; he answered the king that he preferred[11] to go to mass, and was thereby[19] saved.

Sully was then[20] living in[21] the Latin Quarter. He lodged[11] with[22] a Protestant[20] innkeeper, and was attending the courses of a college called Collège de Bourgogne. He

---

[1] *cordial entretien*, m. [2] replace by *puis*. [3] turn: 'of a family noble, protestant.' [4] add 'years.' [5] see page 94, footnote 15. [6] turn: 'to the king of Navarre, Henry.' [7] so greatly pleased; *plut tant au*. [8] *celui-ci*. [9] *auprès de lui*. [10] *pour y*. [11] when, in the course of the narrative, it becomes necessary to introduce subordinate explanations of facts, states, or conditions considered permanent for the time being, the tense changes from the past definite to the imperfect. [12] *la nuit de la*. [13] *le fit appeler devant lui*. [14] repeat the object pronoun. [15] 'to have,' in the sense of 'to cause' a thing to be done, is rendered by *faire*, followed immediately by the infinitive of the second verb. [16] imperfect of *se faire*. [17] omit this word. [18] *avec fureur*. [19] *ainsi*. [20] place after the word modified. [21] *à*. [22] *chez*.

was awakened[1] during the night by the cries of the assassins and the groans of the wounded. Two of his servants went out to learn[2] what was passing.[3] They did not return; they were killed[4] in the street. Sully was[5] still very young; he was twelve years old; but he had much presence of mind. He dressed,[1] put a big mass-book under his arm, and went down into the street to go to his college. A band of assassins stopped[6] him; but they saw that he had[5] a mass-book and believed that he was[5] a[9] Catholic. They therefore let him pass.[7] Sully arrived at the college, and the principal hid him for a few days.

Sully left the[8] college when the massacre was ended; but, like his master, Henry of Navarre, he became a[9] Catholic. While Henry of Navarre was retained a[9] prisoner at the court, Sully lived at Paris; in 1575, Henry escaped, and Sully followed him. Both then declared that they had become Catholics because they had been forced to it, and they became Protestants again. They went over to the[10] Protestants, and took part in[11] all the civil wars of the reign of Henry III. ✡

Sully was[5] fifteen years old when he began to fight in this way.[12] He proved himself right away a[9] brave and bold soldier. One day, Henry of Navarre, who had seen him fight in[11] the first rank, in an encounter where there was[5] much danger, said to those who stood around him: "There is[13] a young nobleman of good family; he will some day amount to something good,[14] or I am[15] much mistaken."[16]

---

[1] the narrative proper is resumed; hence, the past definite. [2] *savoir.* [3] reflexive form. [4] use the active voice. [5] see page 96, footnote 11. [6] verb agrees in the singular. [7] turn: *ils le laissèrent donc passer.* [8] *sortit du.* [9] omit this word. [10] went over to the; *se rendirent au milieu des.* [11] *à.* [12] *ainsi.* [13] *voilà.* [14] he will . . . good; *il fera un jour quelque chose de bon.* [15] future. [16] *fort trompé.*

9. YOUTH OF RICHELIEU.

Richelieu was born at Paris in 1585. He was[1] the fourth child of a nobleman of[2] Poitou, who was[1] not rich. He was[3] at first destined to the military profession,[4] and commenced by being a brilliant cavalier. But he had[1] a brother who was[1] Bishop of Luçon, and this brother died.[3] Then Richelieu's mother advised[3] him to become[5] a[6] priest, promising[7] him that she would obtain for him the bishopric of his brother. Richelieu consented, and the cavalier became Bishop of Luçon in 1607; he was[1] then twenty-two years old. His bishopric was[1] one of the poorest in[8] France. Richelieu was miserably housed;[9] his chimneys smoked; he had no garden. He performed very well[10] his duties as[8] bishop, but he was discontented. He longed to come to the court, to[11] be a[6] minister, and to[11] play a grand rôle.

During the minority of Louis XIII., Richelieu found favor with[12] the queen, Marie de Médicis, by all kinds of flatteries and compliments. He even became minister[13] in 1616; but Louis XIII., who was entering upon[14] his fourteenth year, quarrelled with his mother, who was governing the kingdom very badly,[15] and who was obliged to leave the court. Richelieu followed her; during several years, he employed his skill to reconcile the king with his mother. He succeeded;[16] and, to reward him, Marie de Médicis had him appointed[17] cardinal.

Marie de Médicis desired[18] also that Richelieu should

---

[1] see page 96, footnote 11. [2] *du*. [3] narrative is resumed; hence, past definite. [4] *au métier des armes*. [5] *se faire*. [6] omit this word. [7] participle must be preceded by *en*. [8] *de*. [9] *mal logé*. [10] *au mieux*. [11] *pour*. [12] found favor with; *se fit bien venir de*. [13] he even . . . minister; *il devint même une première fois ministre*. [14] *dans*. [15] place after the word modified. [16] say 'to it.' [17] *le fit nommer*. [18] past definite.

become[1] prime minister of Louis XIII. The king did not at first[2] consent.[3] "I know him better than you do,[4] madame," said he to his mother; "he is a man of boundless ambition."[5] He finished, however, by yielding; and in 1624, Cardinal Richelieu became prime minister of Louis XIII.

At the end of the year 1642, the Cardinal fell seriously ill. He felt[6] that his end had come. He asked his doctor how much time he had[7] yet to live. "Twenty-four hours," was the answer.[8] Richelieu employed his last hours in[9] preparing himself for[9] death, but he occupied himself[7] still with[10] the affairs of the State. He gave the king counsels on what should be done after his death.[11] He pointed out to him the men that were to[12] replace him, and then[4] he expired peacefully.

It is difficult to[10] love Richelieu, for he was[6] not good and he was[6] often hypocritical; but it is impossible not to[13] admire him, for he desired[14] the greatness of France, and he gave her this greatness.[15]

10. COLBERT, MINISTER OF LOUIS XIV.

Colbert was the[4] son of a merchant of Rheims, and he had raised himself[16] by dint of hard[4] work to the[17] rank which put[7] him above the greatest lords.

No one in[9] the world has ever[4] worked more than Colbert. He encouraged[18] agriculture, industry, commerce. He reorganized[19] the finances, and he gave[18] to Louis XIV.

---

[1] imperfect subjunctive. [2] place after word modified. [3] say 'to it.' [4] omit this word. [5] turn: 'of an ambition boundless.' [6] past definite. [7] imperfect. [8] *répondit-il.* [9] *à.* [10] *de.* [11] on what . . . death; *sur ce qu'il y avait à faire après lui.* [12] imperfect of *devoir.* [13] *de ne pas.* [14] past indefinite of *vouloir.* [15] he gave . . . greatness; *il a donné à la France cette grandeur.* [16] pluperfect. [17] *jusqu'à ce.* [18] past indefinite. [19] he reorganized; *il a mis un ordre parfait dans.*

the money necessary for the enormous expenses of that prince, in times of peace and war.[1]

He used to rise[2] before daylight,[3] and he worked sixteen hours a[4] day. He was not fond of intruders and was called[5] "the man of marble." Solicitors were afraid of his thick[6] eyebrows,[7] of his wrinkled[6] forehead, and of his hard, deep-set eyes.[8]

One day, a lady came[9] to ask him a favor. As he did not answer,[10] she insisted, and finally went down on her knees[11] and said to him: "My lord, I[12] entreat you, listen to me." Then, Colbert went down on his knees before her and said:[13] "Madame, I entreat you, let me alone![14]" It was[15] thus that he used to get rid[2] of those who made[13] him lose his time.

11. DEATH OF LOUIS XVI.

After five months of captivity in the tower of the Temple, the king appeared[16] before the Convention. He defended[17] himself with firmness, and received with the resignation of a Christian the news[7] of his condemnation. On[18] the 20th of January, 1793, Louis XVI. obtained the permission to see his family for the last time.[19] The final[6] interview took place

---

[1] of that . . . war; *que fit ce prince aussi bien dans la paix que dans la guerre.* [2] explain the use of the imperfect in this and following verbs. [3] *le jour.* [4] *par.* [5] put in the active voice. [6] place after the word modified. [7] use the singular form. [8] turn: 'of his eye profound and hard' (*dur*). [9] tell why the use of the past definite should be resumed here. [10] use imperfect. [11] and finally . . . knees; *puis, finit par se mettre à genoux devant lui.* [12] insert *en.* [13] this verb must be preceded by *lui.* [14] *laissez-moi tranquille.* [15] *c'est.* [16] *comparut.* [17] observe that this selection recounts a series of historical facts conceived of as beginning, developing, and reaching completion at a definite moment of the past; hence, every predicate verb should be in the past definite. [18] in dates, do not translate the prepositions; use the cardinal form of the adjective — usually, simply the figure; do not use capitals for names of months. [19] turn: 'to (*de*) see a last time his family.'

in the dining room of the prison. The queen entered first,[1] holding her son by the hand; then, came Madame Elizabeth, sister of the king, and the royal[2] princess, daughter of Louis XVI. They fell into[3] the arms of the king.

For almost[4] two hours, they remained closely clasping one another.[5] The separation was heart-rending, but the king preserved all his fortitude.[6]

He rested[7] quietly during the night. At five o'clock in[8] the morning, his valet Cléry awoke him. Louis XVI. made his last preparations;[9] he heard mass and took communion. At nine o'clock, the soldiers came to get him. "Let us go,"[10] said the king. During the journey and on the scaffold, he kept up the noblest attitude.[11] The executioner bound his[12] hands. Turning toward the people, he tried[13] to pronounce a few words; but a rolling of drums[14] drowned his voice, and a few minutes[15] after, his head dropped into the basket. Thus perished a king who was good, virtuous, but too weak, alas! to resist the fury of the Revolution.

12. NAPOLEON BONAPARTE.

Napoleon Bonaparte was born at Ajaccio, on[16] the 15th of August, 1769. His father, Charles Bonaparte, had[17] five sons and three daughters. Napoleon was the second in[8] the

---

[1] *la première.* [2] place after word modified. [3] they fell into; *ils se précipitèrent dans.* [4] almost: *près de.* [5] remained . . . another; *demeurèrent étroitement serrés les uns contre les autres.* [6] preserved . . . fortitude; *garda toute sa fermeté.* [7] *reposer.* [8] *de.* [9] *préparatif,* m. [10] *partir.* [11] turn: 'he kept up (*garder*) during the journey (*trajet,* m.) and on the scaffold the noblest attitude.' [12] turn: 'to him bound the.' [13] *vouloir.* [14] use singular. [15] *instant,* m. [16] see page 100, footnote 18. [17] remember that, in a narrative, all parts which are purely accessory, — such as the description of a previously existing state or condition, the description of a locality, or explanations interpolated here and there, — must be expressed by the imperfect.

family. At ten,[1] he entered[2] the military[3] school of Brienne, where his masters were[2] struck by[4] his extraordinary[3] intelligence. At fifteen, he was[2] sent to the military[3] school of Paris. At sixteen,[1] he was[5] second lieutenant in a regiment of artillery. He rapidly[3] became captain, then commander, and he had[5] this rank, when he was sent to the army which was besieging Toulon, of which the English had taken possession in 1793. Thanks to him, Toulon was taken in a few days, and he was made general. He was[5] then twenty-four years old.

When Bonaparte took[6] command of the Army of Italy in 1796, he was twenty-six. Illustrious[3] generals like Augereau and Masséna served[5] under his orders. He explained[7] to them his plans for the[8] campaign, and on[9] hearing him, Masséna said to Augereau: "We have found our master."

In[9] less than[4] a year, — from the month of April, 1796, to the month of February, 1797, — the Army of Italy, which was[5] very poorly equipped, and which was lacking in almost all the necessaries,[10] carried off twelve great victories. With 55,000 soldiers, Bonaparte triumphed over[4] more than[4] 200,000 enemies, killed[11] more than 20,000, took[11] more than 80,000, and returned[12] to[9] France[13] the greatest general of the Republic.

13. MARRIAGE OF NAPOLEON WITH MARIE-LOUISE.

Even after all his victories, Napoleon was considered by the kings of Europe a parvenu.[14] The[15] son of a poor[16]

---

[1] add *ans*. [2] remember that the real canvass of the narrative — namely, all parts essential to it — must be related in the past definite; *entrer* here governs *à*. [3] place after the word modified. [4] *de*. [5] see page 101, footnote 17. [6] insert *le*. [7] *exposer*. [8] for the; *de*. [9] *en*. [10] in almost . . . necessaries; *de presque toutes les choses nécessaires*. [11] this verb must be preceded by *en*. [12] *revenir*. [13] add *avec la réputation du*. [14] turn: 'Napoleon, even after . . . was considered (*imperfect*) by . . . as . . .' [15] omit this word. [16] *petit*.

Corsican[1] lawyer, he owed[2] his crown only to[3] himself; the other kings and emperors had received theirs from a long line[4] of ancestors, and although afraid[5] of him, they considered[2] him as greatly[6] beneath them.

Napoleon had[7] the weakness of wishing to enter the[8] family of kings. While he was a general, he had married Josephine, widow of General Beauharnais;[9] and Josephine, after becoming[10] empress, was[2] very popular in France. As she had not given him any children, he left[7] her by a divorce, — for the law permitted[2] divorce in France, — and he resolved[7] to marry a princess.

Napoleon thought[11] at first of a sister of the Emperor of Russia, Alexander, but she was refused him.[12] He then[1] turned toward Austria and forced the Emperor, Francis II., to give him his daughter, Marie-Louise. The latter was regarded[7] by her parents, and she regarded herself, as a victim.

She abandoned her husband as soon as he was vanquished in 1814, and took refuge at Vienna, taking with her[13] the Emperor's son, who was called[14] the "King of Rome." After the death of Napoleon, she married an Austrian[1] colonel. As to her son, he lived[7] at the court of Austria, where he bore[2] the title of Duke of Reichstadt. His thought was[2] unceasingly turned toward France. He died in 1832, and the remains of this unhappy youth repose to-day near[15] those of the princes of the house of Austria.

---

[1] place after the word modified. [2] see page 101, footnote 17. [3] *ne . . . qu'à.* [4] *suite*, f. [5] although afraid; *tout en ayant peur.* [6] *fort.* [7] see page 102, footnote 2. [8] *dans une.* [9] turn: 'he had married (*épouser*) while he was general, Josephine, widow of the . . . .' [10] after becoming; *devenue.* [11] *songer* (*à*). [12] *lui.* [13] taking with her; *emportant.* [14] use the active voice. [15] *auprès de.*

MORE ADVANCED PROSE COMPOSITION.

1. LES PRÉCIEUSES RIDICULES.

(COMEDY BY[1] MOLIÈRE.)

The daughter and niece of a good bourgeois, named M. Gorgibus, are two pedantic maidens[2] who dream of seeing themselves surrounded by wits, people in[3] the fashion, who talk only[4] in a pretentious style; they have changed their names of Madelon and[5] Cathos for the more euphonious names of Aminte and[5] Polixène, and they pose as[6] *précieuses*. Gorgibus who, above[7] all, is a man of practical common[8] sense, wishes to marry[9] these two young girls to[10] two young men of good family, named La Grange and
10 Du Croisy. These young men express themselves with simplicity and naturalness, a fact which does not commend them to[11] Cathos and[5] Madelon, who dismiss[12] them with contempt. The two noblemen swear to avenge themselves, and send to the girls,[13] to this effect, two impudent valets,
15 who give themselves out[14] for men of quality.

---

[1] *de.* [2] pedantic maidens; *deux pédantes.* [3] *à . . .* [4] *ne . . . que.* [5] repeat preposition. [6] *en.* [7] *avant.* [8] practical, common: *gros bon.* [9] *marier;* this is the only proper verb to use when the English verb has the sense of giving in marriage, or of performing the religious or civil ceremony of marriage. [10] *avec.* [11] a fact . . . them to; *ce qui ne les recommande pas auprès de.* [12] *éconduisent.* [13] to the girls; *chez elles.* [14] omit this word.

Our two simpletons take the extravagances of the Marquis de Mascarille and[1] the Vicomte de Jodelet for the perfection of wit and[1] gallantry. All at once, the masters arrive, with[2] stick in[3] hand, to seek their servants. They do not fail to banter the coquettes on the choice of their admirers, and leave them confounded and overwhelmed with shame. Gorgibus advises[4] them a little harshly to profit by the lesson, and they disappear under the crushing[5] apostrophe: "Go hide yourselves, wretches,[6] go hide yourselves!"

2. AN ADVENTURE OF RABELAIS.

(QUART D'HEURE DE RABELAIS.)

The Cardinal du Bellay, having been sent as ambassador to Rome by Francis I., took Rabelais along, in the capacity of[7] doctor. The latter showed very little respect for[8] the Pope, and conducted himself in such a way that he was obliged to leave Rome in haste, and to escape to France on foot, poorly clad and without money. After[9] numerous days of march, he at last arrived at Lyons. But to continue his journey to Paris with less fatigue,[10] he bethought himself of a funny[11] stratagem which would have been very dangerous for a man less celebrated.[12]

He entered a tavern, and asked for a good room. He begged his[13] hostess to send him a young boy who could[14] read and write. As soon as he was alone,[15] he made several little packages filled with[16] ashes. The young boy arrives, with paper, pen,[17] and ink. Rabelais dictates several notes to him. On one, were written[18] these words, "Poison to

---

[1] repeat preposition. [2] omit, and replace by *le*. [3] *à la*. [4] *engager* (*à*). [5] under the crushing; *devant cette foudroyante*. [6] *vilaines*. [7] in the capacity of; *en qualité de*. [8] *à*. [9] insert *de*. [10] turn: 'his journey with less fatigue to (*jusqu'à*) Paris.' [11] *plaisant*. [12] *connu*. [13] use definite article. [14] who could; *sachant*. [15] as soon . . . alone; *une fois seul*. [16] filled with; *de*. [17] *une plume*. [18] *sur l'un, on lisait*.

kill[1] the king;" on another, "Poison to kill the queen;" on a[2] third, "Poison to kill the dauphin." A similar label is prepared for each one of the children of France. Rabelais sticks one of these labels on each of the packages,[3] and
5 says to the boy: "My child, take care not to[4] speak of this to your mother or[5] any one, for it would endanger[6] your life and mine." He then shut up the whole in his valise, and called for[7] dinner. The boy ran at once to relate everything[8] to his mother. The latter, trembling with fear,[9] has-
10 tened to go to inform the provost of the city. The provost repairs at once to the tavern; and, after a careful search of[10] the room of the traveller, takes possession of him and his valise. The bad appearance[11] of Rabelais, his evasive answers during the examination[12] which he had to undergo,
15 brought[13] upon him grave suspicions. He repeated[14] without ceasing: "Take good care of[15] my valise, and conduct me to[16] the king; I have strange things to reveal to him."[17] His hands were tied,[18] he was put[18] upon a good horse, and taken[18] to Paris. He lived well[19] all the way without having
20 to spend a cent, and upon[20] his arrival in the capital, he was arraigned before the king.

Francis I. knew[14] him well. He asked him where he had left Monsieur le cardinal du Bellay. Rabelais then related[21] his story. His valise was[21] opened; in the[22] presence of all,
25 he swallowed[21] a little of the contents of all the packages, and proved[21] thus that they were[14] entirely harmless. The

---

[1] *faire mourir.* [2] use definite article. [3] turn: 'on each package one of the labels.' [4] *gardez-vous bien de.* [5] *ni.* [6] it would endanger; *il y va de.* [7] *demanda à.* [8] turn: 'ran everything to relate . . . .' [9] *transie de peur.* [10] *une perquisition minutieuse dans.* [11] *mine,* f. [12] *dans l'interrogatoire.* [13] *firent peser.* [14] imperfect. [15] *prenez bien garde à.* [16] *vers.* [17] turn: 'I have to (*à*) reveal (*révéler*) to him things strange.' [18] use the active voice. [19] insert *pendant.* [20] *dès.* [21] present. [22] in the; *en.*

court laughed heartily at the ingenious scheme[1] which he had imagined to finish his long journey on horseback,[2] without untying the strings of his purse.[3]

This adventure gave rise[4] to the expression, "*le mauvais quart d'heure de Rabelais*," that is to say, the moment when[5] one must pay his bill,[6]—a big bill, especially.

3. THE STORY OF JACQUES AMYOT.

Jacques Amyot was born at Melun, on the third of October, 1513. His father was a haberdasher, but he had great trouble in supporting[7] his family, which consisted of a boy, Jacques, and two daughters. These, being older,[8] occupied themselves with the affairs of the shop; as for Jacques, he had no taste for commerce; to procure[9] books and[10] devour them in secret, such was his only ambition. His mother, of whom he was the favorite, had put him at school, where he[11] quickly learned to read. His father called him lazy,[12] when he found him with[13] a book in his hand.

One day, Jacques resolved to go to Paris. He was hardly thirteen years old, when he left his parents without even saying good-by to them; and without money, poorly clad, wearing coarse[14] shoes, he took in midwinter the road which led from Melun to Orleans.

It took several days at this time[15] to go from Melun to Paris; but the poor child, unaware of this[16] distance, had

---

[1] heartily . . . scheme; *beaucoup du moyen ingénieux.* [2] turn: 'to finish on horseback his . . ..' [3] without . . . purse; *sans bourse délier.* [4] gave rise; *a donné naissance.* [5] *où.* [6] *écot,* m. [7] great trouble in supporting; *beaucoup de peine à nourrir.* [8] being older; *les ainées.* [9] use the reflexive form. [10] replace by *pour.* [11] where he; *et il y.* [12] called him lazy; *le traitait de grand paresseux.* [13] omit this word. [14] wearing coarse; *chaussé de gros.* [15] *époque,* f. [16] unaware of this; *très ignorant de la.*

imagined that he could[1] arrive there the same evening. After having walked until night without having met[2] any one of[3] whom to ask his road, he thought[4] that he had lost his way, for he had not yet perceived the steeple of the
5 Cathedral of Orleans. Benumbed with cold, worn out with hunger and fatigue, he lay down near a bush, unable to see[5] his road through the snow which was beginning to fall.

Happily, a horseman passed by[6] and heard his groans. One of his servants took the child up behind him,[7] and a
10 few drops of cordial quickly revived him. Little Jacques[8] then related his escapade; but, when they[9] arrived at Orleans, he was seized with high fever[10] and had lost consciousness.

The nobleman who had picked him up on the road, took
15 him to the hospital of that city, and intrusted him to the care[11] of the sisters, whose charity he knew well.[12] The next day, he came to see him, gave him a letter of recommendation to[13] a master in[14] one of the numerous colleges of Paris, and went away promising[15] him to go that very
20 evening[16] to reassure his mother at Melun, where he was to return.

Three days of rest completely cured little Jacques,[8] and he was able to resume his journey.[17] He received twelve cents and some provisions before leaving[18] the hospital, so
25 that he could gayly finish the rest of his journey.[19] On[15]

---

[1] conditional present. [2] infinitive present. [3] *à*. [4] past definite. [5] unable to see; *ne reconnaissant plus*. [6] *près de là*. [7] up behind him; *en croupe*. [8] proper nouns preceded by adjectives, require the definite article. [9] *on*. [10] *était pris d'une grosse fièvre*. [11] use plural. [12] *dont il connaissait la charité*. [13] *pour*. [14] *de*. [15] the present participle should be preceded by *en* when the action which it represents, and that expressed by the governing verb, are supposed to take place simultaneously. [16] *le soir même*. [17] to resume his journey; *se remettre en route*. [18] before leaving; *avant sa sortie de*. [19] he could . . . his journey; *qu'il fit gaiement le reste du chemin*.

leaving the hospital, he swore that if ever he became rich, he would endow this establishment.

In the letter which he had given to Jacques, the kind nobleman asked that his protégé be employed as[1] errand boy and servant of the professors and pupils. If he showed any striking disposition[2] for study, he was to be received[3] later within[4] the school.

The master to whom Jacques handed this letter, was a man full of business[5] and naturally gruff. "Choose[6] your[6] place at the door," he said to him, "and we shall see about giving you[7] errands." Then, with[8] a brusque gesture, he dismissed him. But Jacques was of a resolute and persistent nature which nothing could discourage.[9] The child chose[10] a place in a doorway and carried there a big bunch of straw; he settled down comfortably, and supped gayly on[8] the remains of the provisions which the sisters of Orleans had given him.

The next day, on their way to school,[11] the pupils saw the little errand boy, seated, his[12] legs hanging over[13] the fresh straw, reading in a book of the[12] Gospels; his pretty face[14] charmed them. Several of[15] them questioned him, and having learned that he was an[12] errand boy, employed him immediately; thus, he earned some few cents from the very first day.[16]

Immediately upon[17] his arrival at Paris, Jacques had

---

[1] asked that . . . employed as; *demandait qu'on employât . . . en qualité de.* [2] use plural. [3] *on devait le recevoir.* [4] within; *à l'intérieur de.* [5] full of business; *affairé.* [6] use singular. [7] about giving you; *à te faire faire.* [8] *de.* [9] which . . . discourage; *qui ne se décourageait point.* [10] use the reflexive form. [11] on their . . . school; *en se rendant aux classes.* [12] omit this word. [13] *sur.* [14] *bonne mine.* [15] *d'entre.* [16] turn: 'he earned thus, from the very (*dès le*) first day, some few cents (*quelque menue monnaie*). [17] *dès;* this preposition, which is sometimes synonymous with *à partir de*, marks a point of departure in time.

written to his mother; he soon received word from her that she was sending him a big loaf of bread by[1] the boat from Melun. Every week, she would send him another like it,[2] to prevent him from dying of hunger in the great city. He wondered[3] what he could[4] do to prove, some[5] day, his gratitude to this tender mother. To cross the threshold of the college, be admitted into it as a[6] pupil, and become a scholar, this was, it seemed to him,[6] the surest means;[7] but how was[8] he[8] to reach this goal?

One day, after a holiday, a lady passed by,[8] taking her two sons back to the college. "At your service, ladies[7] and gentlemen," said little Jacques to them. "Why,[9] it is our little errand boy," said one of the pupils to his brother. "We must recommend him to mamma; she will give him more to do[10] than we." Their mother looked at Jacques and was charmed by his face and his childish grace.[11] Having seen the book which he held in his hand, she questioned him, and learned of[8] his passionate ardor for reading and learning. "Do you[7] wish[7] to accompany my sons to college every day?"[12] she asked him kindly. "At my request, the professors will permit you to attend all their lessons, and thus[12] you will be able to learn something."

The child, not knowing how to prove his gratitude to the good lady, knelt down before her and kissed[13] the hem[14] of her gown.

---

[1] turn: 'he received soon from her word (*l'avis*) that a big loaf was arriving to him by . . . .' [2] would send . . . like it; *elle devait lui en envoyer un semblable.* [3] *rêvait* (*à*). [4] conditional present. [5] *un.* [6] *c'était, lui semblait-il.* [7] use singular. [8] omit this word. [9] *tiens.* [10] *elle lui fera gagner plus.* [11] childish grace; *gentillesse*, f. [12] in French, an adverb or adverbial expression is usually placed immediately after the verb, even when the verb has an object; observe that the reverse is true of English construction. [13] and kissed; *en baisant.* [14] use plural.

He was soon admitted within[1] the college; he had[2] a little room under the roof, and he was authorized[3] to share the studies of the pupils. His life, from this time on,[4] became a combat full of ardor.

The big loaf which he received each week from Melun,[4] assured his subsistence; he could[2] add to this[5] some fruits and vegetables, and buy[6] a coat with the small wages which the kind lady had procured him;[7] he could[2] also[4] buy[6] some books! He then[4] resolved[8] to surpass all his fellow-students in his studies.

After rapid progress in the study of Latin, he wished[2] to learn the[9] beautiful Greek language, which only[10] a few scholars then[4] knew in France. By dint of work, he succeeded[2] in learning Greek. The king, Francis I., had instituted a chair for the teaching of this language. One day, Jacques was[2] examined by his professors in the[11] presence of Francis I. and his sister, Marguerite de Navarre, who[12] also knew Greek. The king and princess, astounded at his learning, overwhelmed him with praises, and took[2] under their protection the[9] young scholar, who[11] was[11] to[11] be[11] one of the future glories of France.

A few days after, the boat from Melun landed[2] at Paris a poor man and his wife clad in the humble garments of the artisans of that time; they were the father and mother of Jacques Amyot. "Oh, my dear son!" said the happy woman to him, pressing[13] him tenderly upon her heart, "I have brought[14] thee thy father, who has forgiven thee and[15] is very proud of thee."

---

[1] *à l'intérieur du.* [2] past definite. [3] use active voice. [4] see page 110, footnote 12. [5] add to this; *y ajouter.* [6] use the reflexive form. [7] turn: 'which to him had procured (*assurés*) the kind lady.' [8] *songea* (*à*). [9] use demonstrative adjective. [10] *qu'à peine.* [11] omit this word. [12] insert *elle* (for emphasis). [13] see page 108, footnote 15. [14] present tense. [15] repeat subject.

Amyot was ordained priest, then appointed professor of Greek; later, he became tutor to[1] the children of Henry II. and finally, Bishop of Auxerre. He left in[2] his testament a legacy to the hospital of Orleans, as he had promised to do[3] in his childhood.

We[4] owe him a complete translation of the works of Plutarch. The language of Amyot is rich,[5] clear, eminently French. His vocabulary, like his syntax, is drawn from the very traditions[6] of the French language; his expressions are lively, picturesque, full of grace and brilliancy.[7] He is at the same time[8] familiar and *naïf*. The success of this work was[9] rapid and permanent. Until his death, Amyot saw[9] each year marked by a new edition. In[10] the seventeenth century, the French Academy counted[9] him among the models of the language, and his place has remained by the side of Montaigne and Rabelais, among the greatest prose writers of France.

4. JEAN-BAPTISTE LULLI.

(CREATOR OF THE OPERA IN FRANCE.)

In 1643, the Chevalier de Guise was travelling in Italy. He was preparing[11] to return to France, when he received a letter from Mademoiselle, duchesse de Montpensier,[12] in[2] which she[13] begged[14] him to select[15] a bright child of ten or[10] twelve, of whom she might[16] make a[17] jester. After many inquiries, the chevalier decided[11] upon[18] a little Florentine

---

[1] *de.* [2] *par.* [3] as he . . . to do; *ainsi qu'il en avait pris l'engagement.* [4] *on.* [5] *abondante.* [6] singular. [7] *fraîcheur.* [8] at the same time; *en même temps.* [9] past definite. [10] *à.* [11] reflexive form. [12] turn: 'received from Mademoiselle, duchesse de Montpensier, a letter . . . .' [13] *celle-ci.* [14] imperfect. [15] this verb must be preceded by *lui.* [16] imperfect of *vouloir.* [17] *son.* [18] *pour.*

lad,[1] possessed[1] of a lively imagination and of such[2] singular ugliness that his face, at first sight, provoked[3] laughter. This child was Jean-Baptiste Lulli. His parents were very poor, but his father was a[1] rather good musician, and Lulli had learned so early to play on the violin that, at the age of ten, he was already a remarkable performer.[4] His father and mother consented gladly to a separation that was to make the fortune of their son; and soon after, the chevalier arrived in France with the future jester of Mademoiselle. The peculiar physiognomy of Lulli did not find favor with[5] the capricious princess. Instead of admitting him to the number of her pages, she made him one of her[6] scullions. He soon became the favorite of the numerous valets of the house. During the day, he diverted them by his ingenious wit,[7] and in[1] the evening, he played for[8] them the prettiest national[9] airs of Naples and Florence. He played already with a wonderful precision, and an originality of execution that was[10] very extraordinary for a child of his age.

The Comte de Nogent, coming one day to pay a visit to the Duchesse de Montpensier,[11] heard the little virtuoso giving[12] his habitual[9] concert to the valets of Mademoiselle, on[8] the lower[9] story, in the servants' hall.[13] The count stopped a moment to listen to the violinist; then, attracted by the talent[14] of the performer, the great lord, attired as he was for a ceremonial visit,[15] did not disdain to descend to[16] the servants' hall, where Lulli was doing wonders[17] on his violin.

---

[1] omit this word. [2] of such; *d'une si.* [3] that his . . . provoked; *qu'elle suffisait à première vue pour provoquer.* [4] *un instrumentiste assez remarquable.* [5] did not . . . with; *ne put trouver grâce près de.* [6] she made him one of her; *elle le fit descendre au rang de ses.* [7] *ses naïves saillies.* [8] *à.* [9] place after the noun. [10] omit 'that was' and 'a child of.' [11] coming . . . to the Duchesse de M.; *qui venait un jour en visite chez la duchesse de M.* [12] *qui donnait.* [13] in the servants' hall; *où se trouvait l'office.* [14] *mérite,* m. [15] *tout paré qu'il était pour une visite d'étiquette.* [16] *jusqu'à.* [17] singular.

The unexpected visit of the count to[1] the Duchesse de Montpensier, changed suddenly the fortunes[2] of Lulli. The noble visitor spoke in such glowing terms to Mademoiselle of the[3] scullion violinist that she desired[4] to hear him. As he had descended from the drawing-room to the kitchen, so[5] now[5] he reascended from the kitchen to[6] the drawing-room. A caprice had condemned him to an obscure position, his precocious talent brought him out of it.[7] He had been reduced to having for audience only[8] the valets of the house, yet[5] he deserved[9] to be appreciated by the most brilliant assembly.

The Duchesse de Montpensier gave[9] a concert, which was[9] the occasion of a veritable triumph for Lulli.

The king organized[10] for him the company[11] of the *petits violons de la chambre;* and this company,[11] of whom Lulli was the leader, acquired[12] a European reputation.

Here ends the childhood of Lulli. His skill[13] as a[5] performer had drawn him from obscurity, his genius as a[5] composer has rendered him forever celebrated. He is justly regarded[14] as the real creator of the opera in France. He was[9] overwhelmed with glory and riches. The king conferred nobility upon him;[15] and Molière, who was a judge of wits, greatly enjoyed the original conversation of[16] Lulli, who was[9] one of his intimate friends.

---

[1] *chez.* [2] singular. [3] spoke in . . . of; *fit à Mademoiselle un si grand éloge du.* [4] *celle-ci voulut.* [5] omit this word. [6] *dans.* [7] brought him out of it; *l'en fit sortir.* [8] *on l'avait réduit à n'avoir pour auditeurs que.* [9] past definite. [10] *créa.* [11] *troupe,* f. [12] *eut.* [13] *savoir,* m. [14] *on le regarde avec justice.* [15] conferred . . . him; *l'anoblit.* [16] was a judge . . . conversation; *qui se connaissait en hommes d'esprit, faisait le plus grand cas des saillies originales de.*

5. LA MARE-AU-DIABLE.

(By George Sand.)

La Mare-au-Diable is a little masterpiece, destined to live[1] as long as the French language.

Germain, the handsome ploughman,[2] a widower with three children, at the age of twenty-eight, must marry again for reasons of necessity.[3] "Père Maurice," his father-in-law,[2] advises this[4] by all kinds of sensible and practical[5] words, and Germain, who still mourns his first wife, consents although with[6] regret. "Père Maurice" has already some one in view; it is a rather rich widow,[2] who lives[7] some leagues from there, and who is said to be[8] a good match. As it is not a question of a love marriage, but of an arrangement between mature and serious persons, one interview, according to "Père Maurice," will suffice to decide everything.[9] "To-morrow is Saturday," he says to Germain; "you[10] will start about two o'clock in[11] the afternoon, you[10] will be down there by[7] night; the moon is full just now,[12] the roads are good, and it is a ride of only three leagues."[13]

All the interest and action of the novel centre in this journey. At first, Germain[2] was to take the trip alone, mounted on his good mare, "la Grise." But an old neighbor, "la Guillette," profits by[11] the occasion to intrust to Germain her daughter, "la petite Marie," who has just been hired[14] as a shepherdess quite near the place where Germain is going.[2] Marie seems only a child, yet she is almost sixteen.[15] She mounts behind[16] on "la Grise,"

---

[1] *qui vivra.* [2] reverse the order, thus: 'the handsome ploughman, Germain.' [3] *par nécessité, par raison.* [4] *l'y engage.* [5] *positives.* [6] *s'y rend, bien qu'à.* [7] *à.* [8] use the active voice, thus: 'that one says to be.' [9] *pour tout éclaircir.* [10] use singular form. [11] *de.* [12] *grande dans ce moment-ci.* [13] it is . . . leagues; *il n'y a pas plus de trois lieues de pays.* [14] *qui vient de s'engager.* [15] *va sur ses seize ans.* [16] behind; *en croupe.*

and both start off,[1] Germain dreaming of his dead wife[2] more than of his future one,[1] and Marie weeping at[3] leaving her mother and home.[4]

After the first moments of silence, Germain[5] begins to chat with "petite Marie." She knows the[6] motive of his journey. He speaks to her of his children, of Pierre who ran away angry,[7] because his father would not take him along.

But suddenly, the mare shies. She has seen something in the ditch. It is Pierre, who has gone ahead, and who, while waiting for his father to pass,[8] has fallen asleep. Germain scolds, the little fellow[1] coaxes his father and implores him to take him along. "Petite Marie" arranges everything, thinks of everything. "La Grise" is strong[9] and can very well carry three persons, two of whom[5] weigh so little. Pierre shall ride in front and Marie[10] behind. One feels that this simple child bears within her all the qualities of nature that make of the thoughtful woman[11] the providence of the home.

Meanwhile, little incidents come up. "Petit Pierre" is hungry; they must[12] stop and take a light repast. Peasants do not eat quickly; they[13] lose an hour, it is growing late, and they still have the great woods to cross.[14] A dense fog rises with the night. They[13] miss the road and they[13] are in the heart of the forest. They[13] roam around the awful[15] Devil's Pool (it is thus that the country people call it[5]) and, after many efforts to[16] get away from it, they[13] are always led

---

[1] omit this word. [2] dead wife; *défunte*, f. [3] *de*. [4] *le pays*. [5] reverse the order. [6] *est au fait du*. [7] angry; *en boudant*. [8] while . . . to pass; *en attendant son père au passage*. [9] *solide*. [10] shall ride in front and Marie; *sera devant, comme Marie est* . . . . [11] which make . . . woman; *qui font que la femme prudente est*. [12] *falloir*, followed by the infinitive. [13] *on*. [14] it is growing . . . to cross; *on est en retard, et il reste encore à traverser les grands bois*. [15] *cette maudite*. [16] *maint effort pour*.

back to it as by a spell. They decide to[1] stop and camp. Here, in two chapters entitled "Under the Great Oaks" and "Evening Prayer," we[2] have a series of exquisite and delicate scenes, which have not their equal nor[3] their model in any idyl, classic or modern. 5

Germain, like all men, even the most robust and valiant, is impatient by[4] nature; "petite Marie," like all women, when they are good, is patience itself.[5] She makes a bed for the child, lights a[6] fire with dried branches, and opposes her[7] good humor to bad luck. Germain, in the[8] presence 10 of this merit which he had never suspected, ponders.[9] His ideas begin to take a certain turn. "What!" he says to himself, "I am going very far to look for a woman whom I do not know, who is said to be rich, who is proud without doubt, who will think that she does[10] me a[8] great honor by 15 marrying me, with my three children; and here[11] I have close to me a child, simple, poor, but rich in[4] the gifts of God, in[4] natural qualities and virtues, and who would be a treasure in my house and in my heart."

Meanwhile, nature speaks; Germain is hungry. They[2] 20 detach a partridge from a certain present of game which he was carrying to his intended. It is again Marie who superintends[12] this improvised feast. "'Petite Marie,' the man who marries[13] thee will be no[14] fool!" Such is the idea which is born irresistibly in the mind of Germain, on seeing 25 her so discreet, so industrious. Marie continues to occupy

---

[1] *on prend le parti de.* [2] *on.* [3] *n'ont leur pendant ni.* [4] *de.* [5] *même.* [6] *du.* [7] *la.* [8] omit this word. [9] *s'étonner.* [10] the object of *croire, penser,* and their synonyms, is often an infinitive, while the object of these verbs in English is usually expressed by the full clause; thus: 'will think that she does me' is translated *croira me faire.* [11] *voilà que.* [12] *qui est l'intendante de.* [13] use the future of *épouser;* this verb is the one commonly used to translate 'marry' as a transitive verb; 'to marry,' in the sense of 'to get married,' is translated by *se marier.* [14] *ne sera pas un.*

herself with "petit Pierre;" she calms his fears,[1] she amuses him, and Germain cannot help remarking: "There is no one like thee to[2] talk to children." The child says[3] his prayer, which Marie prompts him word by word;[4] his eyes close already. But his ideas become confused, and, vaguely mixing all that he has seen and heard during the evening, he says: "Father, if you[5] want to give me another mother, I want it to be[6] 'petite Marie'!" The little angel of innocence expresses thus the idea which has been only vague and floating until now in the mind of Germain. From that moment, he perceives that "petite Marie," of whom he had never thought as beautiful,[7] is sweeter[8] than a wild rose, and he goes over every detail of the[9] graceful portrait, concluding thus:[10] "She is[11] cheerful, she is[11] good,[11] industrious,[11] loving, and[11] clever.[12] I do not see what one could wish for[13] better."

As soon as the day dawns,[14] Germain proposes to Marie to continue[15] their journey. The young girl then offers[16] to conduct his child to the farm, in order to wash his pretty face and clean his clothes, before presenting him to his new mother. The latter is already provided with[13] three suitors. Her vanity and coquetry completely disgust[17] Germain with[18] a marriage which has never pleased him. He withdraws from the ranks of her lovers, and goes to the farm to get his boy. There[18] he learns, to his great surprise, that the young girl and Pierre have already gone away. "Petite Marie," on

---

[1] *le rassure dans ses terreurs.* [2] *pour.* [3] *fait.* [4] which . . . by word; *que lui souffle mot à mot la petite Marie.* [5] use singular form. [6] *je veux que ce soit la.* [7] as beautiful; *pour sa beauté.* [8] *plus fraîche.* [9] goes over . . . of the; *il se détaille le.* [10] concluding thus; *en concluant.* [11] *c'est; elle* would be the usual subject, but *ce, cela,* or even *ça,* is also used, though rarely, in speaking familiarly of children or young people; all adjectives here agree in the masculine. [12] *drôle.* [13] *de.* [14] as soon . . . dawns; *quand le jour est venu.* [15] *achever.* [16] this verb must be preceded by *lui.* [17] *achèvent de dégoûter.* [18] *arrivé là.*

arriving at the house of the farmer who had hired her as a shepherdess, had run[1] a serious danger on the part of this brutal man. She had run away[1] frightened, taking little Pierre with her, and she meets Germain in time to have him protect and avenge her.[2] The farmer is punished, and the three return[3] to their village.

Germain tries to forget his adventure by burying himself in his[4] work, but he becomes so sad and so absent-minded that everybody remarks it. He dares not confess to his father-in-law that he is in love with Marie, who is too poor and too young to be his wife. But he thinks always of her; and, at last, he falls into such sadness that his mother-in-law questions him and learns his secret. She promises to obtain the consent of her husband to this marriage. But Germain does not know if Marie will want to marry a man older than she. At last, authorized by his father to go to see the young girl and speak to her, he betakes himself to the poor cottage of "la Mère Guillette." Marie is alone by the fireside, and so absorbed in her thoughts[5] that she does not hear Germain come.[6] The scene which passes between them is as natural and as beautiful as all the others, and "petit Pierre" reappears, as in all the critical situations of the novel. He is the mediator, and, as it were,[7] the bond between the first wife and the one who will be the second. Germain lifts him up in his arms; and, putting him in those of his betrothed, he says: "Here, Marie, you have made more than one fellow happy by[8] loving me!"

---

[1] past indefinite. [2] meets . . . avenge her; *retrouve à temps Germain pour la protéger et la venger.* [3] *tous les trois s'en retournent.* [4] *en se replongeant dans le.* [5] so . . . thoughts; *si pensive.* [6] *n'entend pas venir Germain.* [7] as it were; *comme.* [8] he says . . . happy by; *tiens, Marie, lui dit-il, tu as fait plus d'un heureux en.*

6. THE SILENT ACADEMY: A TALE OF THE ORIENT.[1]

There was at Amadan a celebrated academy, whose first statute was couched in[2] these terms: "The Academicians shall think much, write little, and talk as little as possible."[3] It was called the Silent Academy, and there was not a real
5 savant in all Persia who was not ambitious to[4] be admitted into it. Doctor Zeb, author of an excellent little book, learned from his remote[5] province that there was a vacancy in[6] the Silent Academy. He departs at once, arrives at Amadan; and, presenting himself at the door of the hall
10 where the Academicians are assembled, he begs the porter to hand the following note to the president:[7] "Doctor Zeb humbly asks to receive the vacancy."[8] The porter at once performed his[9] errand, but the doctor and his note arrived[10] too late; the place was[10] already filled. The president,
15 charged with the duty of announcing[11] this sad news to the doctor, could hardly make up his mind to do it,[12] and did not know in what way to do it.[13] After having reflected a moment, he had a large bowl filled with water,[14] but so perfectly[15] filled that another drop would have made the liquid
20 overflow;[16] then, he signed to the porter to introduce[17] the candidate. He appeared with that simple and modest look which almost always accompanies real merit. The president arose; and, without uttering a word, he pointed with a dis-

---

[1] *conte oriental.* [2] *était conçu en.* [3] talk as . . . possible; *ne parleront que le moins qu'il sera possible.* [4] there was . . . ambitious to; *il n'était point en Perse de vrai savant qui n'eût l'ambition de.* [5] his remote; *au fond de sa.* [6] *qu'il vaquait une place dans.* [7] turn: 'to hand to the president this note.' [8] to receive the vacancy; *la place vacante.* [9] *s'acquitta . . . de la.* [10] imperfect. [11] with . . . announcing; *d'annoncer.* [12] could . . . to do it; *ne pouvait presque s'y résoudre.* [13] in what . . . it; *comment s'y prendre.* [14] he had . . . water; *il fit remplir d'eau une grande coupe.* [15] *bien.* [16] would have . . . overflow; *eût fait déborder la liqueur.* [17] signed . . . introduce; *fit signe qu'on introduisît.*

appointed look to[1] the symbolical bowl so exactly filled. The doctor understood that there was no place left in[2] the Academy; but, without losing courage, he endeavored to make the Assembly understand[3] that a supernumerary Academician could do no harm.[4] Seeing a rose leaf at his feet, he picked it up[5] and laid it so delicately on the surface of the water, that not a single drop escaped from it.[6] At this ingenious answer, everybody applauded; the rules were set aside[7] for that day, and the doctor was admitted[8] by acclamation.

7. CHATEAUBRIAND.

In 1791, Chateaubriand explored North America as a[9] poet and as an[9] artist, not at all as a[9] geographer and[9] traveller. He buried himself in the forests of Upper Canada, lived with the Indian tribes, intoxicated with the majesty of that magnificent country.[10] He brought back from this extraordinary voyage admirable sketches, which were soon to appear under the titles of[11] *Atala*, *Les Natchez*, *René*. A newspaper happening to fall into[12] his hands, informed him of the progress[13] of the Revolution, and[14] tore him away from the New World. He embarked in haste, landed in France about the middle of 1792, and joined[15] the ranks of the "Emigrés" of Coblentz. Wounded at the siege of Thionville, he was left for dead at the edge[16] of a wood. Saved almost by miracle, weak, without resources, he succeeded in

---

[1] pointed . . . look to; *lui montra d'un air affligé.* [2] there was . . . in; *qu'il n'y avait plus de place à.* [3] endeavored . . . understand; *songeait à faire comprendre.* [4] could . . . harm; *n'y dérangerait rien.* [5] turn: 'he sees at his feet a rose leaf, he picks it up.' [6] *qu'il n'en échappe pas une seule goutte.* [7] were set aside; *on laissa dormir les règles.* [8] *reçu.* [9] as a; *en.* [10] *cette nature grandiose.* [11] which . . . titles of; *d'où bientôt devaient se dégager les créations d'. . . des . . . de.* [12] happening . . . into; *tombé entre.* [13] *en l'instruisant de la marche.* [14] omit this word. [15] joined; *alla se jeter dans.* [16] at the edge; *au coin.*

crossing over to[1] England, where he lived[2] for a few years in indigence and solitude.

Gifted with an incredible power for work,[3] he earned[4] his bread during the day with translations[5] for publishers, 5 and spent[4] his[6] nights in[7] writing his *Essai sur les Révolutions.*

In 1801, Chateaubriand brought out[8] his graceful Indian[5] idyl of Atala, a[10] poetic[9] picture of the loves of two young savages, a[10] composition full of ravishing[9] descriptions, of inex- 10 pressible charm, of exquisite sentiment,[11] and of a dazzling brilliancy of style.[12] Its[6] success was[2] immense, and the name of Chateaubriand, hardly known the day before,[13] was[2] henceforth popularized in the whole of Europe. In 1826, there[10] appeared an edition of his works. It brought him[14] 15 500,000 francs. But neither the enormous[9] sums which he received[2] for his works, nor his pensions, nor the gifts[15] of Charles X. ever sufficed for[16] his sumptuous[9] tastes and his prodigality, and he was[2] constantly tormented by money cares.[17]

20 He also gave to the public some essays on English[9] literature, and a literal[9] translation, in prose, of Milton's "Paradise Lost."

Chateaubriand was[2] the loyal[9] friend of the celebrated Madame Récamier, who had[4] for him an admiration which 25 resembled worship.[18] They had met[19] at the deathbed of Madame de Staël. In speaking of this friendship, he writes:

---

[1] in crossing over to; *à passer en.* [2] past definite. [3] with . . . for work; *d'une puissance de labeur incroyable.* [4] imperfect. [5] *des travaux de traduction.* [6] use definite article. [7] *à.* [8] *fit paraître.* [9] place after the word modified. [10] omit this word. [11] turn: 'of a charm (*grâce,* f.) inexpressible, of a sentiment exquisite.' [12] dazzling . . . style; *d'un coloris éblouissant.* [13] hardly . . . before; *la veille encore à peine connu.* [14] *il en obtint.* [15] *les générosités.* [16] ever . . . for; *ne suffirent jamais à.* [17] *des nécessités d'argent.* [18] *ressemblait à un culte.* [19] *faire connaissance.*

"Agitated by these political occupations and disgusted by the ingratitude of courts, peace[1] of the heart awaited[2] me in the depth of this retreat (*l'Abbaye-au-Bois*), as the coolness[3] of the woods after a[4] burning[5] plain." Until the end of his life, he reigned[6] without a[7] rival in this salon of *l'Abbaye-au-Bois*, the meeting place of most of the[8] contemporary[5] celebrities.

Chateaubriand died on the fourth of July, 1848, in the midst of the storms of a new[5] revolution. According to[9] the wish that he had expressed, his remains were placed[10] in a tomb erected upon[11] an island near Saint-Malo.

It is there that he rests[12] in a tomb,[13] whose simplicity is not without majesty.[14] A stone without a[7] name, a cross; behind,[15] Saint-Malo; in front, the ocean and the sky; yonder, beyond the horizon where one's gaze loses itself,[16] America. All around him,[7] the sound of the waves,[17] which seems still to feed[18] and to lull "the sadness of his soul and the eternal melancholy of his thought."

The most salient[5] qualities of Chateaubriand are brilliancy[19] of style, wealth of imagination, sensibility, passion, eloquence, coloring, descriptive[5] power,[20] and fecundity. Although[7] admirably gifted in poetic qualities,[21] he was never successful[22] in poetry.

---

[1] *placidité*, f. [2] imperfect. [3] *le frais*. [4] *au sortir d'une*. [5] place after the noun. [6] *trôna*. [7] omit this word. [8] the meeting . . . of the; *où se sont rencontrés la plupart des*. [9] *suivant*. [10] *ont été déposés*. [11] in a tomb erected upon; *dans une tombe élevée sur*. [12] *reposer*. [13] *sépulture*, f. [14] *faste*, m. [15] *par derrière*. [16] where . . . itself; *où le regard s'enfonce*. [17] *le bruit du flot*. [18] still to feed; *entretenir encore*. [19] *éclat*, m.; use definite article before all these nouns. [20] *puissance*, f. [21] in poetic qualities; *sous le rapport poétique*. [22] turn: 'he has, nevertheless, never succeeded (*réussir*) . . . .'

IDIOMATIC PROSE COMPOSITION.

1. LITERARY NOTES ON SOME AUTHORS OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.

a. Corneille.

Youth of Corneille. — Pierre Corneille, by a rare combination of qualities, raised dramatic art to such a height that no one has ever excelled him.[1] He was born at Rouen, in 1606. He studied law to comply to his parents' wishes.[2] A singular chance gave rise to the poetic genius of the young lawyer. A friend having taken him to the house of a young lady with whom he was in love, to make him a judge of his good taste, Corneille was so thoroughly convinced,[3] that he soon became[4] the rival of his friend. The adventure appeared so comical to him, that, without knowing any rules of dramatic composition,[5] he put it in the form of a[6] comedy. He called his play *Mélite*, from the name of the young lady, and went to offer it modestly to some poor actors in[7] Paris, whose fortune it made.

Corneille and his Brother. — Thomas Corneille, brother of the great Corneille, was born in Rouen in 1625. It is probable that the successes of his brother early turned his attention to[8] the stage; moreover, he possessed genuine and natural talent, and a great faculty for work.[9] It is

---

[1] *n'a pu le dépasser.* [2] *pour ne pas déplaire à ses parents.* [3] add 'of it.' [4] *ne tarda pas à devenir.* [5] *aucune règle de théâtre.* [6] in the form of a; *en.* [7] *de.* [8] *vers.* [9] turn: 'he had a true talent natural and a great faculty for (*facilité*, f., *de*) work.'

interesting to know what close unity existed between his brother and himself.[1] As they had married two sisters, they made but one[2] household; and it was only after twenty-five years of life in common, that the idea occurred to them to divide[3] the property, which, it is true, was not very considerable.[4]

It is related that the two poets mutually aided each other in the composition of their works. When one of them had trouble in finding a rhyme, he would open a trap door made[5] in the floor, and appeal[6] to the other, who was working below. Thomas Corneille had a prodigious faculty for[7] versification. His memory was not less astonishing. He did not write his tragedies; he composed them in his mind, learned them by heart, then recited them from beginning to end.[8] Once accepted, he wrote them to give them to the actors. The best known of his tragedies is entitled, "The Earl of Essex."

External Appearance of Corneille. — This great man was of a simple and even commonplace appearance.[9] His conversation was heavy and lacking in charm[10] and vigor. Marville states that the first time he saw him, he took him for a merchant of Rouen. On this subject, Corneille describes himself thus[11]: —

> "J'ai la plume féconde et la bouche stérile,
> Et l'on peut rarement m'écouter sans ennui
> Que quand je me produis par la bouche d'autrui."

But elsewhere, in defending himself from the attacks of the Hôtel de Rambouillet, he says: —

---

[1] *lui.* [2] *ayant épousé les . . . ils formaient le même.* [3] *que les familles eurent l'idée de partager.* [4] turn: 'which was (*imperfect*) not, it is true, considerable.' [5] *pratiquée.* [6] *la demandait.* [7] *une facilité prodigieuse de.* [8] *d'un bout à l'autre.* [9] turn: 'had an appearance (*extérieur*, m.) simple and . . ..' [10] lacking in charm; *sans agréments.* [11] on this . . . thus; *lui-même s'apprécie ainsi sous ce rapport.*

"Et mes vers en tous lieux, sont mes seuls partisans;
Par leur seule beauté, ma plume est estimée,
Je ne dois qu'à moi seul toute ma renommée."

These same critics, to whom Corneille had read *Polyeucte*, at the Hôtel de Rambouillet, feared[1] that a woman (*Pauline*) who loved at once her husband and her lover, would not interest[2] any one;[3] and it was precisely this, which[4] made[1] the success of the play. *Polyeucte* is the masterpiece of Corneille, the play in which he has best succeeded in combining[5] the pathetic with[6] the sublime.

Corneille as a[7] Writer of Comedy. — Corneille also had the honor of producing[8] *Le Menteur*, the best play which had yet appeared[2] upon[9] the stage, and Molière did not hesitate[1] to recognize the worth of this piece. "When *Le Menteur* appeared," he said[10] to Boileau, "I had a great desire to write, but I was uncertain of what I would write; my ideas were hazy: this work settled them.[11] Without *Le Menteur*, I should doubtless have written some romantic plays,[12] but I should never have written *Le Misanthrope*."

"Embrace me," said Boileau to him, "this confession is worth the best of comedies."[13]

Characteristics of Corneille. — The most salient features of Corneille's genius are the energy, nobleness, and loftiness of his[14] thoughts, power[15] of conception, the incomparable vigor with which he creates[16] and develops his subjects, the abundance and variety of his dramatic effects, the moral beauty of his[14] characters, manly eloquence of expression,

---

[1] past definite. [2] tell why this verb must be put in the subjunctive. [3] replace by *pas*. [4] this, which; *ce qui*. [5] the play . . . combining; *où il a su le mieux allier*. [6] *et*. [7] as a; *comme*. [8] *le mérite de donner*. [9] *à*. [10] after a direct quotation, the subject should follow the predicate. [11] *vint les fixer*. [12] *j'aurais fait, sans doute, quelques pièces d'intrigues*. [13] *voilà un aveu qui vaut la meilleure comédie*. [14] *des*. [15] *la puissance*. [16] *féconder*.

and that admirable faculty of rising to the sublime, naturally and without effort, at one bound, and sometimes by a single one of those expressions[1] which wring from the spectator cries of enthusiasm, and tears of admiration.

Commentary of Sainte-Beuve.—"His heroines, his *adorables furies*, almost all[2] resemble one another; their love is subtle, complex, and comes from the head rather[2] than the heart. One feels that Corneille did not know women well.[3] In a word, Corneille, a pure but incomplete genius, with his great qualities[4] and his faults, reminds me of those great trees whose trunks are bare, rugged, sad, and uniform, and whose summits only, are adorned with branches and sombre verdure."[5]

Last Days of Corneille.—The success[6] of Racine saddened the old age of Corneille, and pecuniary troubles[7] darkened his last days. It is well known[8] that Corneille received[12] a pension of two thousand francs, which ceased being paid to him at the death of Colbert. In the last months of his life, illness exhausted his resources. Boileau, having been informed of his cruel situation, hastened[9] to Versailles and offered the king the sacrifice of his own pension. "I cannot without shame," he said to Madame de Montespan, "receive a pension from the king, whilst a man like Corneille is deprived of one."[10] Louis XIV. hastened to send a hundred louis to the illustrious patient. Two days later,[11] Corneille expired[12] at the age of seventy-eight.

---

[1] *mot*, m. [2] place immediately after the verb. [3] *connaissait peu* . . . . [4] a pure . . . qualities; *génie pur, incomplet avec ses hautes parties.* [5] turn: 'trees, bare, rugged, sad, and uniform by the trunk, and adorned with sombre verdure only at their summit.' [6] plural. [7] *embarras*, m. [8] *on sait.* [9] having been . . . hastened; *informé de sa position cruelle courut.* [10] *en serait privé.* [11] *après.* [12] imperfect.

b. Molière.

"Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme."—During the presentation of the *Bourgeois Gentilhomme*, played for the first time in the Château de Chambord, the inscrutableness of the king kept the courtiers from applauding. The poet's enemies triumphed[1] over this silence, which they interpreted[2] unfavorably, and Molière waited[1] with anxiety for the second performance, hoping that the king would finally declare himself. And,[3] sure enough, after having heard the piece a second time, he sent for him and said to him: "I did not speak to you of your play the first day, because I was afraid[4] of being captivated by the manner in[5] which it had been presented; but truly, Molière, you have written nothing yet[6] which has so greatly entertained me."[7]

Generosity of Molière.—Molière enjoyed[2] an income of 30,000 or[8] 40,000 livres, a very great fortune for those times. He spent[2] a great part of it in liberalities.[9] It was[10] he who advised young Racine to write[11] for the stage; he gave him a hundred louis after he had composed[12] his first tragedy. It was[10] also[13] Molière who trained[1] the celebrated actor, Baron. Molière had noticed him in a troupe of children who were playing[14] in Paris. He took[1] him to his house and treated[1] him like a son.

One day, Baron came to him to say[15] that a poor comedian from the[3] province was asking for a little help[16] to go to

---

[1] past definite. [2] imperfect. [3] omit this word. [4] past indefinite. [5] *de.* [6] *vous n'avez encore rien fait.* [7] has . . . me; *m'ait plus diverti.* [8] *à.* [9] singular. [10] present. [11] *travailler.* [12] when no interval of time is supposed to have elapsed between the occurrence of two actions in the past, the earlier action is described by the past anterior; the later, by the past definite. Ex.: *il lui donna cent louis après qu'il eut composé;* note that the past anterior is almost always introduced by such words as *dès que, aussitôt que, lorsque, quand, après que,* etc. [13] *encore.* [14] add *la comédie.* [15] *annoncer.* [16] *un léger secours.*

join his troupe. "How much must I give him?" asked Molière. "Four pistoles will be quite[1] sufficient," replied Baron. "Give him four pistoles from[2] me; but here are twenty more[3] that I shall give him from[2] you. I want him to know that it is to you that he owes the service I am doing him."

The Supper at[4] Auteuil. — The usual society of Molière was composed[5] of Boileau, [4]La Fontaine, [4]Racine, [4]the musician Lulli, [4]the painter Mignard, and [4]Chapelle. They were in the habit of meeting from time to time at Auteuil, at Boileau's house.

One evening, Chapelle did the honors of the wine cellar so well, that all the guests became intoxicated. The wine had the effect of making them all extremely low spirited.[6] One of them happened to quote this maxim of an ancient poet:[7] "The first happiness of man is not to have been born at all;[8] and the second, is to die." The company, but a moment since so gay, immediately formed the resolution to have an end of[9] life. They rose,[10] embraced one another and started. On the way, Molière, who was less intoxicated than[11] the others, remarked[12] that such a noble deed should not be[10] hidden by the darkness[13] of the night, and that it deserved to be performed[14] in broad daylight. They stopped,[10] and exclaimed as they looked at one another,[15] "He is right!" The following day changed their ideas, and they thought it was wise to[16] bear a little longer[17] the miseries of life.

---

[1] *bien.* [2] *pour.* [3] *en voilà vingt autres.* [4] *de.* [5] reflexive form. [6] had the . . . spirited; *les jeta dans la morale la plus lugubre.* [7] omit this word. [8] happiness . . . at all; *bonheur est de ne point naître.* [9] immediately . . . end of; *prend aussitôt le parti d'en finir avec.* [10] put this and following verbs in the present. [11] who was. . . than; *moins pris que.* [12] remarked; *leur représente cependant.* [13] hidden by the darkness; *ensevelie dans les ténèbres.* [14] *faire.* [15] exclaimed . . . another; *se disent en se regardant.* [16] thought it was wise to; *jugèrent à propos de,* [17] a little longer; *encore.*

Bon Mot of the Prince de Condé.—After a performance of *Le Misanthrope*, Boileau was congratulating Molière on this admirable masterpiece. "You will see something much finer yet,"[1] said his friend to him. He was thinking of[2] *Tartufe*, which is regarded as one of the most perfect works of the great poet. This comedy raised against Molière a perfect storm.[3] A vicar in[4] Paris went so far as to say[5] in a pamphlet that so dangerous a man should be burned.[6] The king was surprised at this indignation; and, in a conversation which he had with the Prince de Condé, he mentioned a certain[7] play in which God was insulted, and which had, nevertheless, been tolerated. "Sire," answered the prince, "in that play, God only is insulted,[8] whilst Molière attacks[9] men."

Molière's Comments on Corneille.[10]—One day, while Molière was dressing, two wits came in and spoke with great eulogy of a tragedy of Corneille, played the day before for the first time. Molière listened[11] to them without saying a word.[12] "Well, gentlemen," he said to them when he was dressed, "you believe then that Corneille is the author of what you heard? Learn that there is a little sprite that has taken a fancy to him.[13] When he sees that Corneille is sitting down at his desk to bite his finger-nails, and attempt to write[14] a few verses, then the little sprite goes up to him[15] and dictates to him four, eight, ten, sometimes even[16] twenty verses at a time, which are above everything that a man can do. After which, the little sprite goes away[17] a few steps, say-

---

[1] something much finer yet; *bien autre chose.* [2] *voulait parler du.* [3] raised . . . storm; *souleva contre Molière une violente tempête.* [4] *de.* [5] so far as to say; *jusqu'à dire.* [6] that . . . burned; *qu'il fallait brûler un homme aussi dangereux.* [7] mentioned a certain; *il lui fit observer telle.* [8] *on n'offense que Dieu.* [9] *s'attaquer à.* [10] turn: 'Molière on Corneille.' [11] imperfect. [12] *sans mot dire.* [13] *qui l'a pris en affection.* [14] *faire.* [15] goes . . . him; *s'approche.* [16] *quelquefois même jusqu'à.* [17] *se retirer.*

ing: 'Let us see how the poor fellow is going to get on by himself!'[1] Then, Corneille writes the following ten, twenty, thirty verses,[2] which are entirely commonplace, and sometimes even bad.[3] The next day, the same game begins again between the sprite and Corneille. Take care, gentlemen, not to confound the two authors; one is a man, the other is more than a man."

c. Boileau.

Boileau Despréaux was born at Paris in 1636. He made himself[4] celebrated by his *Satires*, his *Épîtres*, and his[5] *Art poétique*. In his *Satires*, Boileau had[6] two objects: to make war upon[7] bad poets and to sanction legitimate reputations. He successively attacked all fashionable foibles, and covered with ridicule all the versifiers that showed neither taste nor talent.[8]

Boileau had made himself known[9] early at court by his works. He was forty-seven years old, when he was received at the French Academy. The king having asked him one day if he made part of that illustrious body, he[10] answered:[10] "Sire, I do not;[11] I am not worthy of it." "You shall be,"[12] replied the king; "I wish it." The Academy having elected La Fontaine, the king refused to sanction this election. Some time after, the Academy admitted[13] Boileau. "It is a good choice," said Louis XIV.; "everybody will approve;[14] now, you may appoint La Fontaine."

Louis XIV. always treated[15] him with great[16] considera-

---

[1] the poor . . . himself; *ce vilain va faire tout seul.* [2] *les dix, vingt . . . de suite.* [3] *où il n'y a rien que de très commun, où même il y a souvent du mauvais.* [4] *se rendre.* [5] use definite article. [6] *se proposa.* [7] *à.* [8] that showed neither . . . talent; *sans goût et sans talent.* [9] in French construction, when two verbs come close together and the first is not an auxiliary, the second is always an infinitive. [10] omit this word. [11] turn: 'I am not of it.' [12] verb must be preceded by *en.* [13] *recevoir.* [14] *applaudir.* [15] past definite. [16] *beaucoup de.*

tion, and he consulted[1] him as an infallible judge in matters of taste. The critic sometimes expressed[1] his way[2] of thinking, with a frankness which bordered upon[3] bluntness. The king asked[1] him, one day, what authors had best succeeded in comedy. "I know of[4] only one," he replied, "and that is Molière. All the others have written[5] only farces, like those wretched[6] plays of Scarron."

One day, Louis XIV. asked[7] his opinion about some verses which he had amused himself by[8] writing.[5] "Sire," cleverly replied Boileau, "nothing[9] is impossible to your Majesty. You[10] have desired to write[5] poor[11] verses, and you have succeeded admirably."[12]

Boileau, so inflexible in matters of taste and so pitiless toward poor[11] works, was[1] kind and gentle in his[13] private life, and his conversation, as he[14] says himself, "had[1] neither nails nor claws."[15] Madame de Sévigné used to say that he was[1] "tender in prose and cruel in verse." Several incidents[16] attest the generosity of his heart. Patru, the creator of forensic eloquence, having fallen into the greatest need, saw himself reduced to selling his fine[17] library. Boileau learned that he was going to sell[18] it for a rather modest sum;[19] he immediately offered him a third more for it,[20] paid it, and laid down as a[21] condition that Patru should keep his books until his death.

Boileau died at the age of seventy-five (1711), and was buried in[8] the Sainte-Chapelle.

---

[1] imperfect. [2] *façon*, f. [3] bordered upon; *tenait de la.* [4] omit this word. [5] *faire.* [6] *vilaines.* [7] verb must be preceded by *lui.* [8] *à.* [9] both negatives precede the verb. [10] *elle;* to agree with *majesté.* [11] *mauvais.* [12] you . . . admirably; *elle y a parfaitement réussi.* [13] use definite article. [14] insert *le.* [15] reverse the order. [16] *trait*, m. [17] *riche.* [18] *donner.* [19] *une somme assez modique.* [20] he . . . for it; *il lui en offrit aussitôt un tiers de plus.* [21] laid down as a; *mit pour.*

d. La Fontaine.

Youth of La Fontaine. — Jean de La Fontaine was born in 1621 at Château-Thierry, where his father was inspector of the rivers and forests.[1] His education was rather neglected, and nothing in his youth[2] revealed what he was to be one day. At home, he was remarkable only for[3] his indolence, uselessness, and a keen love of[4] pleasure.[5] His father tried to tear him away from his laziness and excesses, by[6] giving up his office to him, and[6] marrying him to[7] a young lady of great merit, witty, amiable, and graceful. But La Fontaine manifested[8] the same nonchalance in his new position,[2] and accustomed himself to living as if he had neither office nor wife. If he visited his old trees and his streams, it was doubtless only to enjoy the pleasure[5] of a solitary walk or reverie.

La Fontaine and his Son. — La Fontaine gradually[2] separated himself from[9] his family, and at the end of a few years, left[10] his wife and son without divorce suit or[11] scandal. He even[2] finished, they say, by forgetting that he was married. One day, at[12] an entertainment,[2] he met a young man whose distinguished manners delighted[13] him from the first. As he was warmly praising him, some one said to him · "Why, he is your son!"[14] "Ah, indeed, I am very glad of it," he replied coldly.

Rabelais was the favorite author of La Fontaine; he had for him a boundless admiration, and when he wished to

---

[1] *maître des eaux et forêts.* [2] place directly after the verb; this note may refer either to adverbs or adverbial phrases which in the English text precede the verb, or are separated from it. [3] *à la maison paternelle, il ne se fit remarquer que par.* [4] *penchant* (m.) *pour.* [5] plural. [6] *en.* [7] *avec.* [8] *apporter.* [9] *s'éloigner de.* [10] *se séparer de.* [11] replace by *sans.* [12] *dans.* [13] *plaire* (*à*). [14] *comme il en faisait l'éloge: "C'est votre fils," lui dit-on.* Observe that in French, words that serve to introduce a quotation, instead of preceding it, are often found after it, or connecting parts of it.

express his approbation in the most emphatic manner,[1] he would say: "It is as[2] beautiful as Rabelais!"

Absence of Mind[3] of La Fontaine. — Boileau and Racine tried to reconcile La Fontaine to[4] his wife, and persuaded him to make a trip to Château-Thierry with[5] this object.[6] He went off with[5] this laudable intention; but not finding[7] his wife, he went to see a friend with whom he spent the night joyously, and left the next day, pleased with his journey, and not remembering that he had had any other object in coming than that of[8] diverting himself.

After the publication of the Fables, Louis XIV. once more[2] bestowed his favors upon the poet, whose pension had been suspended, on account of his attachment to the fallen minister, Fouquet. The king even[6] permitted La Fontaine to offer him his book in person.[6] The poet went to Versailles to present it to the king, recited his speech very well,[6] and forgot only one thing, namely, to[9] bring his Fables. The king, nevertheless,[6] received him kindly and presented him with a purse full of gold. Hardly had he returned home,[10] than[2] the poet perceived that he had lost his purse. It was found[11] under the cushion of the carriage that had brought him back.

Madame de La Sablière often[6] reproved him for his absence of mind,[3] which bordered sometimes upon rudeness. A rich financier had invited him to dinner, in the hope that he would amuse his guests. La Fontaine ate and kept[12] silence. As the dinner dragged on, he got tired and rose from the[2] table, under the[2] pretext of going to the Academy. He was made to observe[13] that it was not yet

---

[1] *de la manière la plus expressive.* [2] omit; this note may refer either to single words or phrases. [3] *distractions.* [4] *avec.* [5] *dans.* [6] see page 133, footnote 2. [7] turn: 'not having met.' [8] any other object in coming than that of; *un autre but que celui de.* [9] namely, to; *ce fut de.* [10] had . . . . home; *de retour chez lui.* [11] *on la retrouva.* [12] insert *le.* [13] *on fit observer.*

time. "Well," said he, "I will take the longest way;" and he went out. One is not surprised that Madame de La Sablière often said to him: "Truly, my dear La Fontaine, you would be very stupid, if you were not so clever."[1]

La Fontaine's Friends. — Among the friends and protectors of La Fontaine, we must include Turenne, Condé, the Prince de Conti, and the Prince de Vendôme, with whom he lived upon terms of[2] an amiable familiarity. Some ladies of the court treated him with extreme kindness;[3] for instance,[4] the Duchesse de Bouillon, Madame de Sévigné, Madame de La Fayette, Madame de La Sablière, and Madame d'Hervart.

Madame de La Sablière gave[10] him for more than twenty years his board and lodging,[5] and provided[10] for[6] all his needs. A remark of this lady's[7] shows upon what a familiar footing La Fontaine lived in her house. One day that she had dismissed all her servants, she said:[8] "I have sent away all my household;[9] I have kept only my dog, my cat, and La Fontaine."

Anecdote about Baruch. — The private life of La Fontaine was[10] scandalous, and Racine tried[10] in vain to exert over him a salutary influence. One day, when[11] he had taken him to church, he gave[10] him the Bible to entertain him. La Fontaine fell[10] upon the book of the prophet Baruch, and he was filled with admiration for him.[12] "This Baruch was a great genius;[13] who was he?" he asked his friend. The next day, he went about repeating[14] in the

---

[1] *n'aviez pas tant d'esprit.* [2] upon terms of; *dans.* [3] *l'accueillirent avec une extrême bienveillance.* [4] omit 'for instance.' [5] *le vivre et le couvert.* [6] *à.* [7] *un mot de cette dame.* [8] see page 133, footnote 14. [9] *tout mon monde.* [10] past definite. [11] *que.* [12] he was . . . him; *en fut ravi d'admiration.* [13] *c'était un beau génie que Baruch;* note this inverted form of expression, which is more emphatic than the logical order would be. [14] *allait répétant.*

street to every person of his acquaintance whom[1] he[1] met: "Have you read Baruch? He was a great genius."

It was during his sojourn at the house of Madame de La Sablière that La Fontaine composed the greater part of his Fables. He was in the habit of reading all his verses to her before publishing them, or showing them even to his friends. One day, he sent a piece of verse to Racine and wrote to him:[2] "Above all,[2] do not show them to any one, for Madame de La Sablière has not yet seen them."

The Duchesse de Bouillon, in calling La Fontaine her "fablier," seemed to imply that he had produced fables as a tree produces fruit.[3] Madame de Sévigné used to say of La Fontaine's volume[1] of[1] fables: "It is a basket of cherries; one wishes to pick out the finest, and the basket is emptied.[4]

Fouquet, Protector of La Fontaine. — Fouquet, who had declared himself the protector of artists and men of letters, conceived a friendship for La Fontaine, attached him to his person, and gave him[5] a pension of a[1] thousand livres, on condition that he would acknowledge the receipt of it,[6] every quarter, by a piece of verse, a[1] ballad or madrigal.

From that time, the poet took up his residence in Paris, where he became intimate[7] with Boileau, Racine, and Molière. Racine, especially, though eighteen years younger than he,[8] loved him and was loved by him. The absence of mind[9] and the *naïveté* of La Fontaine enlivened the meetings at[10] Auteuil. They[11] called him "le bonhomme" and laughed sometimes at his expense.[12] "Let us not make fun

---

[1] omit this word. [2] *surtout, lui écrivait-il.* [3] names of fruit trees generally end in *ier.* [4] *reste vide.* [5] conceived . . . gave him; *prit La Fontaine en amitié, se l'attacha et lui fit.* [6] that he . . . of it; *qu'il en acquitterait.* [7] *se lia intimement.* [8] *quoique moins âgé que lui de . . . .* [9] plural. [10] *de.* [11] *on.* [12] *à ses dépens.*

of the 'bonhomme,' he will live longer than we, perhaps,"[1] said Molière, who always[1] took his part.[2]

Epitaph, — composed by La Fontaine himself during[3] the time of his worldly life: —

"Jean s'en alla comme il était venu, 5
Mangeant son fonds avec son revenu,
Croyant trésor chose peu nécessaire.
Quant à son temps, bien sut le dispenser:
Deux parts en fit, dont il voulait passer
L'une à dormir et l'autre à ne rien faire." 10

e. Racine.

Voltaire's Opinion of Racine.[4] — Jean Racine is the most accomplished poet of the French language as regards[5] the harmony, purity, and charm of his verse.[6] When some one asked Voltaire to write a commentary of[7] Racine, as he had done for[8] Corneille, he answered: "I have none to make; 15 what I should have to do, would be to put[9] at the bottom of every page: beautiful, harmonious, admirable, pathetic, sublime!" Upon rereading *Mithridates*, Voltaire said of Racine: "This is[10] the poet of the universe who has best understood[11] the human heart. The[12] more one reads Ra- 20 cine, the[12] more one discovers in him[13] a unique talent, set off by all the delicacies of art. If there is anything on earth that approaches[14] perfection, it is he." On[15] the subject of the admirable tragedy of *Athalie*, Voltaire exclaimed:[16] "What style! What poetry! What a man 25 was[17] this Jean Racine! How he goes straight to the

---

[1] see page 133, footnote 2. [2] *parti*, m. [3] *dans*. [4] *Racine commenté par Voltaire*. [5] as regards; *pour*. [6] plural. [7] *sur*. [8] turn: 'as he of them had made one on.' [9] to do . . . put; *à dire, ce serait de mettre*. [10] *voilà*. [11] *connaître*. [12] omit this word. [13] translate 'in him' by *lui* and place before the verb. [14] *sur terre quelque chose qui approche de la*. [15] *à*. [16] imperfect. [17] replace by *que*.

heart! I am tempted to throw everything I have written into the fire, when I reread his works."[1]

Racine's Answer to the Prince de Condé. — The attractions of the court, which he had not ceased frequenting, although he had retired[2] from the world, did not equal the joy that he felt[3] at being in the bosom of his family.[4] As he was returning from Versailles one day,[5] a son of the great Condé came up[6] to him to say that they were expecting him at dinner. "I shall not have the honor of going there," he answered; "it is more than a week since[7] I have seen my wife and children, who are looking forward to eating[8] with me to-day[5] a very fine carp. I cannot excuse myself from dining with them."

Phèdre. — This tragedy was written after a sort of challenge. One day, in a drawing-room,[5] Racine insisted that the suffering[9] of a guilty person could,[10] if[6] treated with talent, excite a deeper compassion than that of a virtuous person. In this tragedy, he tried to interest the spectators in[11] the fate of *Phèdre*, victim of a guilty and unconquerable passion.

After having produced *Phèdre*, Racine, though[6] still young and in the zenith of[12] his literary glory, suddenly[13] gave up the stage and ceased, not only writing for the stage,[14] but even attending the performance of his tragedies.

Racine's Family. — Racine married Mademoiselle de Romanet, daughter of a Comptroller of the Finances. She was a pious and sensible woman,[15] but without any

---

[1] everything . . . works; *au feu tout ce que j'ai fait quand je le relis.* [2] *quoiqu'il se fût retiré.* [3] *éprouvait.* [4] at being . . . family; *d'être au milieu des siens.* [5] see page 133, footnote 2. [6] omit this word. [7] *il y a plus de huit jours que.* [8] who are . . . eating; *qui se font une fête de manger.* [9] *malheur*, m. [10] imperfect. [11] *à.* [12] in the zenith of; *dans toute.* [13] *brusquement.* [14] *scène*, f. [15] *personne*, f.

appreciation[1] of literature. She had never set foot in a theatre, and knew the plays of her husband only by[2] name. Racine had seven children; his one fear was to[3] have a poet among them.[4] He used to tell his eldest son that success[5] does not make a[6] poet happy, and he confessed that the least criticism had pained him more than the greatest praises had given him[7] pleasure. "Do not believe," he used to say, "that it is[8] my verses which procure me the attention[9] of the great.[5] Corneille writes verses a hundred times more beautiful than mine, and yet nobody looks at him. Instead of wearying the people of society with conversations about my works, I converse with them[10] of things which please them. My idea[11] with them is not to make them feel[12] that I have wit, but to[2] inform[13] them that they have. Thus, when you see Monsieur le duc de Bourbon spending whole hours with me, you would be surprised, if you were present, to notice that he often goes out without my having said four words.[14] But little by little, I set him to talking,[15] and he leaves my house,[16] still more satisfied with himself[17] than with me."

f. Madame de Sévigné.

Early[18] Education of Madame de Sévigné. — Marie de Rabutin-Chantal, marquise de Sévigné, was born in Paris in 1626, of one of the most ancient families of Burgundy. She was only five years old when she lost her father, that famous duellist, who, on Easter day 1624, left[19] the church

[1] *notion*, f. [2] *de*. [3] his one . . . to; *toute sa crainte était d'*. [4] a poet among them; *un fils poète*. [5] plural. [6] *le*. [7] *ne lui avaient fait de*. [8] *que ce soient*. [9] *m'attirent les caresses*. [10] with conversations . . . with them; *du récit de mes ouvrages, je les entretiens*. [11] *talent*, m. [12] *de leur faire sentir*. [13] *apprendre* (*à*). [14] *de voir que souvent il en sort sans que j'aie dit quatre paroles*. [15] *le mets en humeur de causer*. [16] *sort de chez moi*. [17] *lui*. [18] *première*. [19] *sortit de*.

right in the middle of[1] Mass, saying aloud that he was going to serve as a[2] second to the no[3] less famous duellist, de Bouteville. He was killed while[4] defending the island of Ré against the English. His wife survived him but a short time. An[12] orphan at the age of six, Marie de Rabutin received a brilliant[5] education. She had for teachers Ménage and Chapelain, poor[6] poets, but fine scholars,[7] who taught her besides French,—Latin, Spanish, and Italian. The court of Anne of Austria still further polished[8] her mind.

Marriage of Madame de Sévigné. — Presented very early[9] at court, Marie de Rabutin was sought after for her wit, her great fortune, and the charm of a physiognomy which was gracious rather than beautiful.[10] Numerous suitors[11] presented themselves. She married Henri de Sévigné, who, killed in a[12] duel, left her a[12] widow with two children, after seven years of marriage. This union had not been happy. Conrart used to say that there was this difference between Madame de Sévigné and her husband:[13] the latter esteemed his wife without being able to love her, whilst she loved him without being able to esteem him. It appears that the marquis used to say very frankly[14] to the marquise: "I think you would be very attractive to[15] another man,[12] but as[12] for me, I cannot love you."[16]

After the death of her husband, she devoted herself to the education of her children. Many opportunities for a second marriage presented themselves,[17] and quite as large a number of admirers:[18] Turenne, the Prince de Conti, Fouquet, the Chevalier de Méré, down to her former pro-

---

[1] right in the middle of; *au beau milieu de la.* [2] as a; *de.* [3] *non.* [4] *se fit tuer en.* [5] *solide;* after the noun. [6] *mauvais.* [7] *littérateurs érudits.* [8] *acheva de polir.* [9] *très jeune.* [10] turn: 'charm (*éclat*, m.) of a physiognomy rather gracious than beautiful.' [11] *parti*, m. [12] omit. [13] change colon to comma, and add *que.* [14] *tout crûment.* [15] *pour.* [16] *vous ne sauriez me plaire.* [17] *de se remarier s'offrirent à elle.* [18] *un non moins grand nombre de soupirants.*

fessor, Ménage; none had any success.[1] The one of her lovers who had the most chance[2] of being well treated, was Bussy, her own cousin. He used to praise the tact with which she managed to discourage her lovers without making them angry. "You are the only woman in[3] the kingdom," he wrote to her, "who can[4] induce a lover to content himself with friendship."

Madame de Sévigné at Court. — After the departure of her daughter, Madame de Sévigné continued to live at the court, going from time to time to pass[5] a season at her estate, *Les Rochers*,[6] in Brittany. She enjoyed herself[7] at Versailles, and the smallest attention from the king overwhelmed her with satisfaction.[8] One evening, he danced with her; she was so dazzled that, returning to her place, she said to her cousin: "It must be confessed[9] that we have a great king." "I should think so,[10] after what he has just[11] done," replied Bussy mischievously.[12]

The most intimate friends of Madame de Sévigné were Fouquet, Cardinal de Retz, and Monsieur and Madame de Pomponne. Many of her letters are written to her excellent uncle, the Abbé de Coulanges, who had brought her up and who left her his whole fortune. She calls him in her letters "le Bien-bon."

Madame de Sévigné at Saint-Cyr. — On another occasion, she showed the intense[13] satisfaction which she felt at[14] the least evidence of favor. She had come to attend the

---

[1] *ne réussit.* [2] *eut le plus de chance.* [3] *il n'y a que vous dans.* [4] explain the use of the subjunctive here. [5] place immediately after *allant.* [6] *dans sa terre des "Rochers."* [7] *se plaisait.* [8] *aise*, f. [9] *il faut avouer.* [10] *je le crois bien.* [11] 'to have just,' followed by a past participle, and used to speak of an action that has just occurred, is rendered into French by *venir de*, followed by an infinitive present. [12] turn: 'the mischievous Bussy.' [13] *une autre fois encore, elle laissa percer toute la folle.* [14] *que lui causait.*

first performance of *Esther* at Saint-Cyr. "The king," she writes, "came toward our seats, and turning,[1] he addressed himself to me, and said: 'Madame, I am sure that you have been entertained.' Without surprise, I[2] answered: 'Sire, I am charmed; what I feel is beyond words.' The king said to me: 'Racine has a great deal of talent.'[3] 'Sire, he has indeed;[4] but, in truth, these young ladies have a great deal too: they enter into the subject as if they had never done anything else.'[5] He said to me: 'Ah, as to that, you are certainly right.'[6] And then his Majesty went away, leaving[7] me the object of envy."

Opinion of Sainte-Beuve. — "The[8] more one thinks of it," says Sainte-Beuve, "the[8] more easily can one explain[9] her maternal affection, this love which for her represented all others. This rich, strong nature had never had any passion properly so-called.[10] An[8] orphan at the age of six, she had never known[11] filial tenderness; she never speaks of her mother. Conjugal love had been[7] bitter to her. She rather fancied[12] her cousin Bussy, but she did not love[7] him with passion. Her daughter inherited[7] all the savings of this heart so rich and so sensitive — a heart that[13] had said until that day: 'I am waiting.' Madame de Grignan was[7] the one[14] passion of her mother. It is to her correspondence with her daughter, after her departure for Provence — a correspondence which lasted twenty-seven years — that she owes her glory."

"If I could only live two hundred years," Madame de Sévigné used to say, "it seems to me that I should be a very admirable person." This wish for a long life,[15] which

---

[1] *après avoir tourné.* [2] *moi, sans m'étonner, je.* [3] *bien de l'esprit.* [4] turn: 'he of it has much.' [5] anything else; *autre chose.* [6] *pour cela, il en est vrai.* [7] past definite. [8] omit this word. [9] *mieux on s'explique.* [10] so-called; *dite.* [11] *ne sentit point.* [12] *agréa un peu.* [13] a heart that; *et qui.* [14] *unique.* [15] *ce souhait de longue durée.*

she formed with a view to the moral perfection which she desired to attain, finds itself realized for her memory. The correspondence of Madame de Sévigné, like[1] *Les Provinciales*, *Les Fables* and *Les Femmes Savantes*, is[2] perfection in a given style. Her[3] charming mind could[4] put a prodigious variety in the expression of a sentiment ever the same, and make the court, the city, the province, the entire world revolve[5] around her daughter.

2. THE GENIUS OF BALZAC COMPARED WITH THAT OF GEORGE SAND.

Balzac said one day to George Sand: "You paint man such as he ought to be; I[6] take him such as he is. But believe me, we are both right.[7] These two roads lead to the same goal. I too[7] love exceptional beings; I am one of them. I need them[8] to bring out my commonplace characters,[9] and I never[7] sacrifice them without necessity. But these vulgar beings interest me more than they[10] interest you; I enlarge them, I idealize them in the opposite sense,[11] in their ugliness or their stupidity. I give to their deformities frightful or grotesque proportions. You cannot do so.[12] You do well not to[13] wish to look at beings and things which would give you the nightmare. Idealize[14] the pretty and the beautiful; that is a woman's work."[15]

Balzac idealizes, but his point of departure is reality. He observes seven or eight misers, adds them up as it were, and creates[16] his Grandet. He concentrates in a single

---

[1] replace by *est de même titre que.* [2] replace by *et ce titre, c'est la.* [3] *ce.* [4] *a su.* [5] make the court . . . revolve; *faire pivoter la cour . . . .* [6] *moi, je.* [7] place after the verb. [8] *il m'en faut.* [9] *être,* m. [10] when the comparison is one of inequality, as here, *ne* must precede the second verb, if the first verb is affirmative.* [11] *en sens inverse.* [12] *vous, vous ne sauriez pas.* [13] *de ne pas.* [14] insert *dans.* [15] *c'est un ouvrage de femme.* [16] *faire.*

* The recent decree allows the use or omission of *ne* in this case

being the characteristics[1] of several, and creates a type. Grandet is more complete, more consistent, more terrible, than any real[2] miser. This is true[3] of all his principal characters. One cannot deny that it is fine, strong, powerful art.[4] Beings[5] thus created have life; they move under our eyes; one sees them, one cannot forget them. Balzac lived in their society, he saw them; he was like a lion-tamer surrounded by wild beasts.[6]

The miser Grandet cannot say a word, make a gesture, eat, go to bed, deal with his wife, his daughter, his servants, or[7] strangers, without showing what he is. Instead of saying vaguely: "This horrible passion had stifled within him all the sentiments of nature," Balzac shows him at work, the[8] torturer of his wife, of his daughter. We behold the agony of these beings whom the miser tramples upon.[9] Not one fact is unimportant; every blow carries. One feels pity, terror, horror,[10] an interest mingled with affright; one feels that this dreadful machine will seize, absorb in its wheels and tear into shreds everything that approaches it. Molière's *Harpagon* is odious, but he is grotesque also, and he is vanquished. Grandet is awful, he makes one shudder,[11] and he dies buried in his gold. After him, there[8] is[8] gold, nothing but gold for his daughter; the springs of the life of the heart are dried up in Eugénie Grandet; the miser has killed her morally. He is like[12] those trees in whose shade[13] everything languishes and dies.[14]

Here, Balzac is in his element. He paints force, a unique force which is the whole of the man,[15] which one finds[16]

---

[1] *caractère*, m. [2] *réel*, irr.; after the noun. [3] this is true; *ainsi*. [4] turn: 'that this (*cela*) is fine, that this is strong, that this is of an art powerful (*puissant*).' [5] must be preceded by *ces*. [6] *ses fauves*. [7] replace by *les*. [8] omit this word. [9] we . . . tramples upon; *on assiste à l'agonie de ces êtres que piétine l'avare*. [10] insert *c'est*. [11] *donne le frisson*. [12] he is like; *tels*. [13] *à l'ombre desquels*. [14] repeat the subject. [15] the . . . man; *tout l'homme*. [16] *retrouver*.

everywhere in him. It is in[1] paintings of this kind — in the development of a single[2] passion — that Balzac is really great.

At the end of his study on Balzac, Taine says: "With Shakespeare and Saint-Simon, Balzac is the largest collection of documents that we have[3] upon human nature." One may add that Balzac has shown all that the strongest nature can do,[4] when it is totally devoid of an[5] ideal; and art, under whatever form, cannot[6] do without it.

Quite different[7] is the method of George Sand. She does not seek to reproduce the real by completing it, nor[5] to create[8] characters and[5] types. She is not of the family of[9] Shakespeare, of[9] Molière; she belongs to[10] that of[9] Rousseau, of dreamers, of contemplators, and not[11] of observers; to that of poets, and not[11] of psychologists, and still less of physiologists. Hardly does she describe the appearance[12] of her characters. She has an idea, or she is possessed by a sentiment. She wishes to express, under an artistic form, this idea or this sentiment, its various aspects, the successive phases of its development; and to do this[13] she creates personages, embodies in individuals[14] pure operations of the mind. She has said: "One must create the characters for the sentiment that one wishes to describe, and not[11] the sentiment for the characters." These are her system and her method;[15] they have their inconveniences and their advantages. Are beings thus created, very real?[16] very lifelike? A human being, a man, a woman, of the nineteenth

---

[1] insert *les*. [2] *unique;* after the noun. [3] explain the use of the subjunctive here. [4] *tout ce que peut la nature la plus forte.* [5] omit this word. [6] under . . . cannot; *sous quelque forme que ce soit, ne saurait.* [7] *tout autre.* [8] *faire.* [9] *des*, although the proper noun retains its singular form. [10] *elle est de.* [11] *non.* [12] *c'est à peine si elle indique l'extérieur.* [13] to do this; *pour cela.* [14] *en des êtres de.* [15] *voilà la méthode et le procédé.* [16] turn: 'these beings thus created, are they very real (*bien réels*).'

century, are these[1] pure abstractions? Can they be reduced to express only[2] an idea, often even a mere aspiration? These characters are often pure, floating, luminous shadows,[3] which glide beneath[4] our eyes.

5 Balzac makes a portrait, and wants to make it life-like.[5] No detail is useless. The body, the face, the eyes, the nose, the costume, the locality, etc., everything must contribute to the truth, or rather to reality. George Sand does not see a model, but her idea, her aspiration,[6] despair,[6] doubt; the 10 character is accessory. It is she that makes him act and speak, or rather it is the idea that she wishes to express.

Here is another[7] characteristic detail. Balzac never forgets his characters. He carries them everywhere with him, even in real[8] life, for[9] he has created them so laboriously! 15 George Sand forgets almost immediately all that has come[10] from her pen. It often happens to her to reread her books without recognizing them.[11] The reason is, that[12] events and characters, everything in her work, belongs to an[13] ideal, abstract world. Imagination, a flash of[13] sensi- 20 bility, a[13] revery, have created[14] the work. But the state of the soul changes; new emotions, other ideas, other aspirations fill it. Immediately these light, aerial beings, which hover between earth and sky, vanish in a kind of fantastic mist.[15] One would like to retain them a moment, to keep 25 them,[16] to recall them. But alas![17] the poet[18] who has created[14] them does not recognize them!

---

[1] *sont-ils de.* [2] *peut-on les réduire à n'exprimer que.* [3] turn: 'some shadows (*ombres*, f.) pure, floating, and luminous.' [4] *à.* [5] *atteindre la ressemblance.* [6] repeat *son.* [7] here is another; *autre.* [8] *réel;* after the noun. [9] omit this word. [10] *sortir.* [11] *de se relire sans se reconnaître.* [12] *c'est que.* [13] use definite article. [14] *donner naissance à.* [15] turn: 'immediately vanish in a kind of mist fantastic, these beings light, aerial, which hover between sky and earth. [16] retain . . . keep them; *les arrêter un instant, les fixer au passage.* [17] *quoi!* [18] add *lui-même.*

VOCABULARY

Note.—This vocabulary is intended to contain all the words that occur in the exercises on grammar and syntax, and in the selections for translation, except the following classes: 1st, personal (including reflexive) pronouns; 2d, proper names (whose gender is not needed) that are exactly alike in the two languages; 3d, words that are translated in the footnotes.

In many vocabularies, certain phrases or combinations reappear under different headings; thus, the pupil finds the French for *as much as* or *as soon as* under *as*, and again under *much* or under *soon*. Also, in English compound verbs, like *go up*, *come in*, *begin again*, etc., the French equivalents are given under *go*, *come*, *begin*, and repeated under *up*, *in*, *again*. This plan has not been adopted in the following vocabulary, in which a large number of such combinations occur. Therefore, in all phrases having a common introductory word, the student must look for the French meaning under the distinctive word in the group; as, for instance, under *much* or *soon* in the examples given above.

In combinations of verbs and prepositions, the French will be found under the verb only; in compound nouns or other cases, preference was given to the word that seemed the most important for grammatical or other reasons.

After French verbs and adjectives that can be used with a dependent infinitive, will be found, in brackets, the preposition that serves as a connective, as "*invite*, inviter [à]," "*happy*, heureux [de]"; it should be remembered that these prepositions are to be used *before an infinitive*. If the verb takes an indirect object, the preposition *à* immediately follows it; thus, "*advise*, conseiller à [de]." In other cases of the use of prepositions after verbs and adjectives, the French preposition will be found enclosed in the ordinary marks of parenthesis, as, "*congratulate*, féliciter (de)," "*astounded*, émerveillé (de)." This is done only when the prepositions to be used differ in the two languages, or when they are required in French and not in English.

Irregular French nouns, adjectives, and verbs are marked. French verbs whose auxiliary is *être* are preceded by a star, as, "*arrive*, *arriver"; but reflexive verbs, which are always conjugated with *être*, are not marked. "Aspirate *h*" is indicated by a dagger before the letter, as, "*hero*, † héros."

The following abbreviations are used:—

adj.	= adjective.	*irr.*	= irregular.
adv.	= adverb.	*m.*	= masculine.
art.	= article.	*n.*	= noun.
conj.	= conjunction.	*pl.*	= plural.
def.	= definite.	*prep.*	= preposition.
dem.	= demonstrative.	*pron.*	= pronoun.
f.	= feminine.	*rel.*	= relative.
indef.	= indefinite.	*sing.*	= singular.
int.	= interrogative.	*vb.*	= verb.

VOCABULARY.

a, un, une.
abandon, abandonner.
able : be able, pouvoir [*no prep.*], *irr.*
about (*prep.*), vers ; sur (*concerning*).
above (*prep.*), au-dessus de ; **above all,** surtout.
absence of mind, distraction, *f.*
absent, absent ; **absent-minded,** distrait.
absorb, absorber.
abstain, s'abstenir, *irr.*
abstract, abstrait.
abstraction, abstraction, *f.*
absurd, absurde.
abundance, abondance, *f.*
abuse (*vb.*), abuser (de).
abuse (*n.*), abus, *m.*
Academician, Académicien, *m.*
Academy, Académie, *f.*
accept, accepter.
accepted (*adj.*), approuvé.
accession, avènement, *m.*
accessory, accessoire.
acclamation, acclamation, *f.*
accompany, accompagner.
accomplished (*adj.*), accompli.
according to, selon.
account : on account of, à cause de.
accuse, accuser.
accustom, accoutumer ; **to accustom one's self,** s'accoutumer.
accustomed (*adj.*), accoutumé [à].
acquaintance, connaissance, *f.*
acquire, acquérir, *irr.*
act, agir.
action, action, *f.*
actor, acteur, *m.*, *irr.*
add, ajouter ; **to add up,** additionner
address one's self, s'adresser.
address (*n.*), adresse, *f.*
admirable, admirable.
admirably, admirablement.
admiration, admiration, *f.*
admire, admirer.
admirer, admirateur, *m.*, *irr.*
admit, admettre, *irr.*
adopt, adopter.
adore, adorer.
adorn, garnir (de).
advance, avance, *f.*
advantage, bien, *m.* ; avantage, *m.*
adventure, aventure, *f.*
adversary, adversaire, *m.*
adversity, adversité, *f.*
advice, avis, *m.* ; conseil, *m.*
advise, conseiller à [de] ; engager [à].
aerial, aérien, *irr.*
affair, affaire, *f.*
affection, affection, *f.* ; **maternal affection,** amour de mère, *m.*

affectionate, affectueux, *irr.*
affirm, affirmer.
affright, épouvante, *f.*
afraid: **to be afraid**, avoir peur, *irr.*; craindre, *irr.*
Africa, Afrique, *f.*
after, après.
afternoon, après-midi, *m* or *f.*
again, encore.
against, contre.
age, âge, *m.*; **old age**, vieillesse, *f.*
agitate, agiter.
agony, agonie, *f.*
agreeable, agréable.
agriculture, agriculture, *f.*
ah, ah.
aid, aider.
air, air, *m.*
alas, hélas.
Alexander, Alexandre.
all (*adj.*), tout, *irr.*
all (*pron.*), tout, tous, toute, toutes; **all** = *everything*, tout.
all (*adv.*), tout, toute, toutes; **not at all**, nullement.
allow, permettre à [de], *irr.*
ally, allié, *m.*
almost, presque.
alone, seul.
aloud, tout † haut.
already, déjà.
also, aussi.
although, bien que, *subjunctive*; quoique, *subjunctive*.
always, toujours.
ambassador, ambassadeur, *m.*, *irr.*
ambiguous, ambigu, *irr.*
ambition, ambition, *f.*
America, Amérique, *f.*; **North America**, Amérique du nord; **South America**, Amérique du sud.
amiable, aimable.
among, parmi.
amuse, amuser; **to amuse one's self**, s'amuser.
an, un, une.
ancestor, aïeul, *m.*, *irr.*; ancêtre, *m.*
ancient, ancien, *irr.*; **the ancients**, les anciens, *m. pl.*
and, et.
anecdote, anecdote, *f.*
angel, ange, *m.*
angry: **to be** or **get angry**, se fâcher; **to make angry**, fâcher.
animal, animal, *m.*, *irr.*
annihilate, anéantir.
another, un autre, une autre; **one another**, se; **another** = *one more*, de plus (*after the noun*).
answer (*vb.*), répondre (à).
answer (*n.*), réponse, *f.*
antiquity, antiquité, *f.*
anxiety, anxiété, *f.*
any (*adj.*), de + definite article; quelque (*emphatic*); *with negation*, ne . . . pas de; aucun (*emphatic*); **any** = *every*, *all*, tout, toute; **any** = *any kind of*, quelconque (*after the noun*).
any (*pron.*), aucun, aucune (*with negation*); en (*with negation*).
anybody, quelqu'un, *m.*; *with negation*, personne, *m.*; **not anybody**, ne . . . personne.
any one, quelqu'un, *m.*; *with negation*, personne, *m.*
anything, quelque chose, *m.*; *with negation*, rien, *m.*; **not anything**, ne . . . rien.
apartment, appartement, *m.*
apology, excuse, *f.*
apostrophe, apostrophe, *f.*
appear, paraître, *irr.*
appearance, apparition, *f.*; **external appearance**, extérieur, *m.*

appetite, appétit, *m.*
applaud, battre des mains, *irr.*; applaudir.
apply, s'adresser; **to apply one's self**, s'appliquer.
appoint, nommer.
appreciate, apprécier.
approach, approcher.
approbation, approbation, *f.*
April, avril.
Arab, Arabe, *m.*
architect, architecte, *m.*
ardor, ardeur, *f.*
arithmetic, arithmétique, *f.*
arm, bras, *m.*
army, armée, *f.*
around (*prep.*), autour de.
arraign, traduire, *irr.*
arrange, arranger.
arrangement, arrangement, *m.*
arrival, arrivée, *f.*
arrive, *arriver [*no prep.*].
art, art, *m.*
artillery, artillerie, *f.*
artisan, artisan, *m.*
artist, artiste, *m.*
artistic, artistique.
as, comme; **as . . . as**, aussi . . . que; **as it were**, pour ainsi dire; **as to** or **for**, quant à; **as well as**, aussi bien que.
ashamed (*adj.*), †honteux, *irr.*; **to be ashamed**, avoir †honte, *irr.*
ashes, cendre, *f. sing.*
Asia, Asie, *f.*
ask, demander à [de].
asleep: **to fall asleep**, s'endormir, *irr.*
aspect, aspect, *m.*
aspiration, aspiration, *f.*
aspire, aspirer.
assassin, assassin, *m.*; massacreur, *m.*
assembled, assemblé.
assembly, assemblée, *f.*
assist, assister.
assure, assurer.
assuredly, assurément.
astonishing, étonnant.
astounded, émerveillé (de).
astrologer, astrologue, *m.*
astronomy, astronomie, *f.*
at, à.
attached (*adj.*), attaché.
attachment, attachement, *m.*
attack (*vb.*), attaquer.
attack (*n.*), attaque, *f.*
attain, atteindre (à), *irr.*
attempt, tâcher [de].
attend, suivre, *irr.* (*a course*); assister (à).
attention, attention, *f.*
attentive, attentif, *irr.*
attest, attester.
attitude, attitude, *f.*
attract, attirer.
attraction, agrément, *m.*
attractive, agréable.
audacity, audace, *f.*
audience, auditeurs, *m. pl.*
August, août.
aunt, tante, *f.*
Austria, Autriche, *f.*
Austrian, autrichien, *irr.*
author, auteur, *m.*
authorize, autoriser [à].
avarice, avarice, *f.*
avenge, venger; **to avenge one's self**, se venger.
avoid, fuir, *irr.*
await, attendre.
awake, éveiller (*transitive*); **to awake**, se réveiller; **s'éveiller** (*intransitive*).
awakened, réveillé.
awakening (*n.*), réveil, *m.*
awful, sinistre.

bad, mauvais; méchant; **it is too bad**, c'est dommage, *subjunctive.*
badly, mal.
bag, sac, *m.*
ball, bal, *m.*; balle, *f.* (*sphere*).
ballad, ballade, *f.*
band, bande, *f.*
banter, railler.
barbarian, barbare, *m.*
bare, nu.
basket, panier, *m.*
battle, bataille, *f.*
be, être, *irr.*; **to be to**, devoir [*no prep.*], *irr.*; **to be better**, valoir mieux [*no prep.*], *irr.*, *impersonal*; **to be damp**, faire humide [*no prep.*], *irr.*, *impersonal*; **to be proper**, convenir, *irr.*, *impersonal*; **it may be**, il se peut, *subjunctive.*
bear, porter; **to bear** or **bear with**, supporter (*endure*).
bearing, démarche, *f.*
beast, bête, *f.*
beat, battre, *irr.*
beautiful (*adj.*), beau [de], *irr*
beautiful (*n.*), beau, *m.*
beauty, beauté, *f.*
because, parce que.
become, *devenir, *irr.*; **become again**, *redevenir, *irr.*
bed, lit, *m.*
before (*prep.*), devant, *denoting place*; avant, *denoting time*; *before infinitive*, avant de.
before (*conj.*), avant que.
beg, prier [de].
beget, enfanter.
begin, commencer [à]; **begin again**, recommencer [à].
behave, se conduire, *irr.*
behind, derrière.
behold, assister (à).
being (*n.*), être, *m.*
believe, croire, *irr.*
belong, appartenir, *irr.*
beloved, bien-aimé.
below, au-dessous; **here below**, ici-bas.
beneath, au-dessous de.
benumbed, engourdi (par).
bequeath, léguer.
besides, outre.
besiege, assiéger.
best (*adj.*), meilleur.
best (*adv.*), le mieux.
bestow upon, rendre (à).
betake one's self, se rendre.
bethink one's self, s'aviser.
betray, trahir.
betrothed, fiancé, *m.*
better (*adj.*), meilleur.
better (*adv.*), mieux.
between, entre.
beyond, au delà de; **beyond words** au-dessus des paroles.
Bible, Bible, *f.*
big, gros, *irr.*
bill, compte, *m.*
bind, lier.
bird, oiseau, *m.*, *irr.*
birth, naissance, *f.*
bishop, évêque, *m.*
bishopric, évêché, *m.*
bite one's nails, se ronger les ongles
bitter, amer, *irr.*
bitterly, amèrement.
bitterness, amertume, *f.*
blade, lame, *f.*
bless, bénir.
blessing (*n.*), bien, *m.*
blind, aveugler.
block, bloc, *m.*
bloody, sanglant.
blow, coup, *m.*
blue (*adj.*), bleu.
blue (*n.*), bleu, *m.*

bluntness, brusquerie, *f.*
boast, se vanter.
boat, bateau, *m.*, *irr.*; canot, *m.*
body, corps, *m.*
bold, hardi.
bolt, verrou, *m.*
bond, lien, *m.*
book, livre, *m.*
border upon, toucher (à).
bore, ennuyer.
born: **to be born**, *naître, *irr.*
born, né.
borrow, emprunter.
both, l'un et l'autre; tous deux, toutes deux.
bottom: **at the bottom**, au bas.
bound: **at a bound**, d'un élan.
boundless, démesuré; fou, *irr.*
bouquet, bouquet, *m.*
bourgeois, bourgeois, *m.*
bow: **court bow**, révérence, *f.*
bowl, coupe, *f.*
box, boîte, *f.*
boy, garçon, *m.*; **errand boy**, commissionnaire, *m.*
branch, branche, *f.*
brave, brave.
bread, pain, *m.*; **loaf of bread**, pain.
break, casser.
breathe, respirer.
brevity, brièveté, *f.*
brief, bref, *irr.*
brigand, brigand, *m.*
bright, spirituel, *irr.*
brilliant, brillant.
bring, apporter (*a thing*); **bring**, amener (*a person*); **bring back**, rapporter (*a thing*); **bring back**, ramener (*a person*); **bring out**, faire ressortir, *irr.*; **bring up**, élever.
Brittany, Bretagne, *f.*
broad, large.
brother, frère, *m.*
brother-in-law, beau-frère, *m.*
brusque, brusque.
brutal, brutal, *irr.*
budding, en bouton.
build, bâtir; construire, *irr.*
bunch, botte, *f.*
burgher, bourgeois, *m.*
Burgundy, Bourgogne, *f.*
buried, plongé (*figuratively*).
burn, brûler.
burning (*adj.*), brûlant.
bury, enterrer; **to bury one's self**, s'enfoncer.
bush, buisson, *m.*
but (*conj.*), mais.
but (*adv.*), ne . . . que.
buy, acheter.
by, par; de (*after expressions of emotions*).

cabbage, chou, *m.*, *irr.*
cake, gâteau, *m.*, *irr.*
call, appeler.
calm, calme, *m.*
camp, bivouaquer.
campaign, campagne, *f.*
can (= *be able*), pouvoir [*no prep.*], *irr.*
Canada: **Upper Canada**, †haut Canada, *m.*
canal, canal, *m.*, *irr.*
canary, serin, *m.*
candidate, candidat, *m.*
capable, capable.
capital, capitale, *f.*
caprice, caprice, *m.*
capricious, capricieux, *irr.*
captain, capitaine, *m.*
captivate, captiver.
captivated (*adj.*), séduit.
captivity, captivité, *f.*
card, carte, *f.*

cardinal, cardinal, *m.*, *irr.*
care, soin, *m.*
carnival, carnaval, *m.*
carp, carpe, *f.*
carriage, voiture, *f.*
carry, porter; **carry off**, remporter (*of a victory*).
case: **in case**, en cas que, *subjunctive;* au cas que, *subjunctive.*
Castile, Castille, *f.*
castle, château, *m.*
cat, chat, *m.*
catch, prendre, *irr.*
cathedral, cathédrale, *f.*
Catholic, catholique; **to become a Catholic**, se faire catholique, *irr.*
cause (*vb.*), causer.
cause (*n.*), cause, *f.*
cavalier, cavalier, *m.*
cease, cesser [de].
ceasing: **without ceasing**, sans cesse.
celebrated (*adj.*), célèbre.
celebrity, célébrité, *f.*
censor, censeur, *m.*
cent, sou, *m.*
centre (*vb.*), se passer.
century, siècle, *m.*
ceremony, cérémonie, *f.*
certain, certain.
certainly, sûrement; certainement.
chain, chaîne, *f.*
chair, chaire, *f.* (*in a college*).
challenge, défi, *m.*
chance, †hasard, *m.*
change, changer.
chaos, chaos, *m.*
chapter, chapitre, *m.*
character, caractère, *m.;* **character**, personnage, *m.* (*in fiction*).
characteristic (*n.*), caractéristique, *m.*
characteristic (*adj.*), caractéristique.
charge, charger [de].
charity, charité, *f.*
Charles the Bad, Charles le Mauvais
charm (*vb.*), charmer.
charm (*n.*), charme, *m.*
charmed (*adj.*), charmé (de).
charming (*adj.*), charmant.
chat, deviser.
cheap, à bon marché.
cheek, joue, *f.*
cheerful, gai.
cherry, cerise, *f.*
chicken, poulet, *m.*
chief, chef, *m.*
child, enfant, *m.* or *f.*
childhood, enfance, *f.*
chimney, cheminée, *f.*
choice, choix, *m.*
choose, choisir.
Christian, chrétien, *irr.*
church, église, *f.*
churchmen, gens d'église, *m. pl.*
Cicero, Cicéron.
circumstance, circonstance, *f.*
city, ville, *f.*
civil, civil.
civilized (*adj.*), civilisé.
clad, vêtu (de).
claim, réclamer.
classic, antique.
claw, griffe, *f.*
clean, nettoyer.
clear, clair.
clearness, clareté, *f.*
clever, habile.
cleverly, ingénieusement.
climate, température, *f.*
climb, grimper (à).
clock: **three o'clock**, trois heures.
close (*vb.*), fermer, *transitive;* se fermer, *intransitive.*

close (*adj.*), intime; **close to**, tout près de.
cloth, drap, *m.*
clothes, habits, *m. pl.*
cloud, nuage, *m.*
coal, charbon, *m.*
coarse, grossier, *irr.*
coat, habit, *m.*
coax, câliner.
coffee, café, *m.*
cold (*adj.*), froid.
cold (*n.*), froid, *m.*
coldly, froidement.
collection, magasin, *m.*
college, collège, *m.*
colonel, colonel, *m.*
color, couleur, *f.*
coloring (*n.*), coloris, *m.*
combat, combat, *m.*
combination, assemblage, *m.*
come, *venir [*no prep.*], *irr.*; **come back**, *revenir [*no prep.*], *irr.*; **come down**, *descendre; **come home**, *rentrer; **come in**, *entrer chez; **come out**, *sortir [*no prep.*], *irr.*; **come up**, *survenir, *irr.*; **come after** or **come to get**, *venir chercher, *irr.*
comedian, comédien, *m.*, *irr.*
comedy, comédie, *f.*
comet, comète, *f.*
comfort, consoler (de).
comfortably, à l'aise.
comical, plaisant.
command (*vb.*), commander à [de].
command (*n.*), commandement, *m.*
commander, commandant, *m.*
commence, commencer.
commentary, commentaire, *m.*
commerce, commerce, *m.*
common: **in common**, en commun.
commonplace, commun; vulgaire.
companion, compagnon, *m.*; compagne, *f.*
company, compagnie, *f.*
comparable, comparable.
compare, comparer.
compassion, compassion, *f.*
compassionate, compatissant.
complain, se plaindre, *irr.*
complete (*vb.*), compléter.
complete (*adj.*), complet, *irr.*
completely, complètement.
complex, combiné.
compliment, compliment, *m.*
compose, composer.
composer, compositeur, *m.*
composition, composition, *f.*
comptroller, contrôleur, *m.*
conceive, concevoir, *irr.*
concentrate, réunir (en).
conception, conception, *f.*
concert, concert, *m.*
conciliatory, conciliateur, *irr.*
conclude, terminer.
condemn, condamner.
condemnation, condamnation, *f.*
condition, condition, *f.*; **on condition that**, à condition que, *subjunctive.*
conduct (*vb.*), conduire, *irr.*; **to conduct one's self**, se conduire, *irr.*
conduct (*n.*), conduite, *f.*
confess, avouer.
confession, aveu, *m.*
confidence, confiance, *f.*
confound, confondre.
confounded (*adj.*), confondu.
confused, troublé; **to become confused**, s'embrouiller.
congratulate, féliciter (de).
conjugal, conjugal, *irr.*
conquer, subjuguer.
conscience, conscience, *f.*
consciousness, connaissance, *f.*; **to lose consciousness**, perdre connaissance.

consecrate, consacrer.
consecrated (*adj.*), sacré (*of kings*).
consent (*vb.*), consentir, *irr.*
consent (*n.*), consentement, *m.*
consequence, conséquence, *f.*
consider, considérer.
considerable, considérable.
consideration, considération, *f.*
consist, se composer.
consistent, logique.
constable, connétable, *m.*
constantly, constamment.
consult, consulter.
contain, renfermer.
contemplate, contempler.
contemplator, contemplateur, *m.*
contemporary, contemporain.
contempt, mépris, *m.*
content one's self, se contenter (de).
content (*adj.*), content.
contents, contenu, *m. sing.*
continue, continuer [de].
contrary, contraire.
contribute, concourir, *irr.*
Convention, Convention, *f.*
conversation, conversation, *f.*
converse with, entretenir, *irr.*
convince, convaincre, *irr.*
coolness, fraîcheur, *f.*
copy, copier.
coquetry, coquetterie, *f.*
coquette, coquette, *f.*
coquettish, coquet, *irr.*
coral, corail, *m.*, *irr.*
cordial, cordial, *m.*
correct, corriger; **to correct one's self**, se corriger.
correspondence, correspondance, *f.*
corrupt, corrompre.
Corsican, corse.
cost, coûter.
costume, costume, *m.*
cottage, chaumière, *f.*
cotton, coton, *m.*
counsel, conseil, *m.*
count (*vb.*), compter.
count (*n.*), comte, *m.*
countess, comtesse, *f.*
country, patrie, *f.* (*native land*); campagne, *f.* (*opposed to city*); pays, *m.*
courage, courage, *m.*
course, cours, *m.*
court, cour, *f.*; **the courts**, les tribunaux, *m. pl.*; **court bow**, révérence, *f.*
courtier, courtisan, *m.*
cousin, cousin, *m.*
cover, couvrir (de), *irr.*
covered (*adj.*), couvert (de).
cow, vache, *f.*
cradle, berceau, *m.*, *irr.*
create, créer.
creator, créateur, *m.*, *irr.*
creature, créature, *f.*
creep, ramper.
crime, crime, *m.*
critic, critique, *m.*
critical, décisif, *irr.*
criticism, critique, *f.*
cross (*vb.*), franchir.
cross (*n.*), croix, *f.*
crown (*vb.*), couronner.
crown (*n.*), couronne, *f.*
cruel, cruel, *irr.*
cry (*vb.*), s'écrier (*exclaim*).
cry (*n.*), cri, *m.*
cultivate, cultiver.
cultivation, culture, *f.*
cup, coupe, *f.*
cure, guérir.
curiously, curieusement.
cushion, coussin, *m.*
custom, usage, *m.*
cut, coupure, *f.*

damage, dommage, *m.*
damp, humide.
dance, danser.
danger, danger, *m.*
dangerous, périlleux, *irr.*; dangereux, *irr.*
dare, oser [*no prep.*].
darken, assombrir.
daughter, fille, *f.*
dauphin, dauphin, *m.*
day, jour, *m.* (*considered as a unit*); journée, *f.* (*considered in all its parts*); **the day before**, la veille; **the next day**, le lendemain; **one day after a**, le lendemain d'un; **Easter Day**, le jour de Pâques.
daylight: **in broad daylight**, en plein jour.
dazzle, éblouir.
dead, mort.
deal (*vb.*), entrer en rapports.
deal: **a good** or **a great deal**, beaucoup (de).
dear, cher, *irr.*
death, mort, *f.*
death-bed, lit de mort, *m.*
deceased (*n.*), défunt, *m.*
deceitful, trompeur, *irr.*
deceive, tromper.
decide, décider.
decision, décision, *f.*
declare, déclarer; affirmer; **to declare one's self**, se déclarer.
deed, action, *f.*
deep, vif, *irr.*
defeat (*vb.*), battre, *irr.*
defeat (*n.*), défaite, *f.*
defend, défendre; **to defend one's self**, se défendre.
deformity, difformité, *f.*
degenerate, dégénérer.
degrade, dégrader.
delicacies, finesses, *f. pl.*
delicacy, finesse, *f.*
delicate, délicat.
delicately, délicatement.
delicious, délicieux, *irr.*
delighted (*adj.*), enchanté (de).
deliver, délivrer.
delude: **delude one's self about**, se faire des illusions sur, *irr.*
Demosthenes, Demosthènes.
dense, épais, *irr.*
deny, nier; disconvenir (de), *irr.*
depart, *partir, *irr.*
departure, départ, *m.*
depend, dépendre (de); compter (sur).
dependent, dépendant.
depress, attrister.
depth, profondeur, *f.*; **in the depth of**, au fond de.
descend, *descendre.
describe, décrire, *irr.*
description, description, *f.*
descriptive, descriptif, *irr.*
deserve, mériter [de].
desire (*vb.*), désirer; **to have a great desire**, avoir envie de, *irr.*
desire (*n.*), désir, *m.*
desk, bureau, *m.*, *irr.*
despair, désespoir, *m.*
despise, mépriser.
destined, destiné.
destiny, destin, *m.*; destinée, *f.*
destroy, détruire, *irr.*
detach, détacher.
detail, détail, *m.*
develop, développer.
development, développement, *m.*
Devil's Pool, Mare-au-Diable, *f.*
devoid, dépourvu.
devote, consacrer; **to devote one's self**, se livrer; se consacrer.
devour, dévorer.

devout: **devout people**, des dévots, *m. pl.*
diamond, diamant, *m.*
dictate, dicter.
dictionary, dictionnaire, *m.*
die, *mourir, *irr.*
difference, différence, *f.*
different, différent.
difficult, difficile [à].
difficulty, difficulté, *f.*
dignity, dignité, *f.*
dine, dîner.
dining room, salle à manger, *f.*
dinner, dîner, *m.*
dint: **by dint of**, à force de.
directly, tout à l'heure.
disappear, disparaître, *irr.*
discipline, discipliner.
discontented: **to be discontented**, s'ennuyer.
discourage, décourager.
discourse, discours, *m.*
discover, découvrir, *irr.*
discreet, avisé.
disdain, dédaigner [de].
disease, maladie, *f.*
disguise (*vb.*), déguiser.
disguise (*n.*), déguisement, *m*
disgust, dégouter (de).
dismiss, congédier.
disposition, disposition, *f.*; **an even disposition**, l'humeur égale.
dissipated (*adj.*), dissipé.
distaff full, quenouillée, *f.*
distance, distance, *f.*
distinguish, distinguer.
distinguished (*adj.*), distingué.
disturb, déranger.
ditch, fossé, *m.*
divert, divertir; **to divert one's self**, se divertir.
divide, diviser.
divine, divin.
Divinity, Divinité, *f.*
divorce, divorce, *m.*; **divorce suit**, procès, *m.*
do, faire, *irr.*; **do**, *used as auxiliary, is not to be translated*; **to do without**, se passer de.
docile, docile.
doctor, médecin, *m.*; docteur, *m.*
document, document, *m.*
dog, chien, *m.*
door, porte, *f.*
doorway, enfoncement, *m.*
dotted, émaillé (de).
doubt (*vb.*), douter.
doubt (*n.*), doute, *m.*; **beyond doubt**, hors de doute.
doubtless, sans doute.
down to, jusqu'à.
dozen, douzaine, *f.*
drag on, se prolonger.
dramatic, dramatique.
draw, tirer.
drawing-room, salon, *m.*
dread, redouter.
dreadful, redoutable.
dream (*vb.*), rêver.
dream (*n.*), songe, *m.*
dreamer, rêveur, *m.*
dress one's self, s'habiller.
dress (*n.*), robe, *f.*
dressed (*adj.*), habillé.
drink, boire, *irr.*
drive, conduire, *irr.*; **drive away from**, chasser de.
drop (*vb.*), *tomber.
drop (*n.*), goutte, *f.*
drown, étouffer.
drum, tambour, *m.*
dry (*adj.*), sec, *irr.*
dry one's self, se sécher; **to dry up**, tarir.
Duchess, duchesse, *f.*
due, dû.

duel, duel, *m.*
duellist, duelliste, *m.*
duke, duc, *m.*
Duke of Savoy, duc de Savoie.
during, pendant.
duty, devoir, *m.*

each, chaque; **each one**, chacun, chacune; **each other**, l'un, l'autre, l'une, l'autre; se.
ear, oreille, *f.*
Earl, comte, *m.*
early, de bonne heure; **so early**, de si bonne heure.
earn, gagner.
earth, terre, *f.*
easily, aisément.
easy, facile [à]; aisé [de].
eat, manger.
edition, édition, *f.*
educated: **well educated**, instruit.
education, éducation, *f.*
efface, effacer.
effect, effet, *m.*
effort, effort, *m.*
Egypt, Égypte, *f.*
Egyptian, Égyptien, *irr.*
eight, †huit.
eighteen, dix-huit.
eldest, aîné.
elect, élire, *irr.*
election, élection, *f.*
elegance, élégance, *f.*
elegant, élégant.
element, élément, *m.*
elephant, éléphant, *m.*
eleven, onze.
Elizabeth, Élisabeth.
eloquence, éloquence, *f.*; **forensic eloquence**, éloquence du barreau.
eloquent, éloquent.
elsewhere, autre part.
embark, s'embarquer.
embody, incarner.
embrace, embrasser.
eminently, éminemment.
emotion, émotion, *f.*
emperor, empereur, *m.*
emphatic, expressif, *irr.*
employ, employer.
empress, impératrice, *f.*
enamel, émail, *m.*, *irr.*
encamped (*adj.*), campé.
enchant, enchanter.
encounter, rencontre, *f.*
encourage, encourager.
end (*vb.*), finir; terminer.
end (*n.*), bout, *m.* (*extremity*); fin, *f.* (*termination*); **at the end**, ~~au bout~~. à la fin
ended (*adj.*), terminé.
endow, douer; doter (*an institution*).
endowed (*adj.*), doué (de)
endure, supporter.
enemy, ennemi, *m.*
energy, énergie, *f.*
engagement, engagement, *m.*
England, Angleterre, *f.*
English (*n.*), Anglais, *m.*
English (*adj.*), anglais.
Englishman, Anglais, *m.*
enjoy, jouir (de); **to enjoy one's self**, s'amuser.
enlarge, grandir.
enlighten, éclairer.
enliven, égayer.
enormous, énorme.
enough, assez (de); **assez** (*adv. of degree*); **sure enough**, en effet.
enrich one's self, s'enrichir.
enter, *entrer (dans).
entertain, distraire, *irr.*
entertained (*adj.*), content.
entertainment, compagnie, *f.*
enthusiasm, enthousiasme, *m.*

enticed, mené.
entire, entier, *irr.*
entirely, entièrement; complètement.
entitled, intitulé.
entreat, supplier.
entrust, confier.
envious, envieux, *irr.*
envy (*vb.*), envier.
envy (*n.*), envie, *f.*
epitaph, épitaphe, *f.*
equal (*vb.*), égaler.
equal (*adj.*), égal, *irr.*
equipped, équipé.
errand, commission, *f.*
error, erreur, *f.*
escapade, escapade, *f.*
escape (*vb.*), échapper (à), *transitive;* s'échapper, *intransitive;* **escape** = *to run away*, se sauver.
especially, surtout.
essay, essai, *m.*
establishment, établissement, *m.*
esteem, estimer.
eternal, éternel, *irr.*
eulogy, éloges, *m. pl.*
euphonious, sonore.
Europe, Europe, *f.*
European, Européen, *irr.*
evasive, évasif, *irr.*
even (*adj.*), même.
even (*adv.*), même.
evening, soir, *m.*
event, événement, *m.*
ever, jamais; **forever**, à jamais; *without verb*, toujours.
every, chaque; **every** = *all*, tout, tous, toute, toutes; **every evening**, tous les soirs.
everybody, tout le monde.
every one, chacun.
everything, tout, *m.*
everywhere, partout.
evidence, apparence, *f.*
evident, évident.
evil (*n.*), mal, *irr.*
evil (*adj.*), mauvais.
exactly, justement; **exactement.**
examine, examiner.
excel, dépasser.
excellent, excellent.
excepted (*adj.*), excepté.
exceptional, exceptionnel, *irr.*
excesses, désordres, *m. pl.*
excite, exciter.
exclaim, s'écrier.
excuse one's self, s'excuser [de] se dispenser [de].
excuse (*n.*), excuse, *f.*
execution, exécution, *f.*
executioner, bourreau, *m.*, *irr.*
exempt, exempt (de).
exercise (*vb.*), exercer.
exercise (*n.*), devoir, *m.*
exert, exercer (sur).
exhale, exhaler.
exhaust, épuiser.
exist, exister.
existence, existence, *f.*
expect, attendre.
expedition, expédition, *f.*
expense, dépense, *f.*
expensive, couteux, *irr.*
experience, éprouver.
expire, expirer.
explain, expliquer.
exploit, exploit, *m.*
explore, explorer.
express, exprimer; **to express one's self**, s'exprimer.
expression, expression, *f.*
expressive, expressif, *irr.*
exquisite, délicieux, *irr.*; exquis.
extraordinary, extraordinaire.
extravagance, extravagance, *f.*
extreme, extrême.

eye, œil, *m.*, *irr.*
eyebrow, sourcil, *m.*

fable, fable, *f.*
face, figure, *f.*; visage, *m.*
facility, facilité, *f.*
fact, fait, *m.*
faculty, faculté, *f.*
fade, se faner; se flétrir.
faded (*adj.*), fané.
fail, manquer [de].
faith, foi, *f.*
faithful, fidèle.
fall, *tomber.
fallen (*adj.*), tombé.
familiar, familier, *irr.*; **familiar footing**, pied de familiarité, *m.*
familiarity, familiarité, *f.*
family, famille, *f.*; **of good family**, de bonne maison.
famished (*adj.*), affamé.
famous, fameux, *irr.*
fanaticism, fanatisme, *m.*
fantastic, fantastique.
far, loin.
far from (*conj.*), loin que, *subjunctive.*
farce, farce, *f.*
farm, ferme, *f.*
farmer, fermier, *m.*
fascinating, entrainant.
fashion, mode, *f.*
fashionable, à la mode.
fast, vite.
fate, sort, *m.*
father, père, *m.*
father-in-law, beau-père, *m.*
fatigue, fatigue, *f.*
fault, défaut, *m.* (*of character*); faute, *f.* (*of conduct*).
favor, faveur, *f.*
favorite, préféré, *m.*; favori, *m.*
fear (*vb.*), craindre [de], *irr.*
fear (*n.*), crainte, *f.*
fear: for fear that, de peur que, *subjunctive.*
feast, festin, *m.*
feather, plume, *f.*
feature, trait, *m.*
February, février.
fecundity, fécondité, *f.*
feel, sentir [*no prep.*], *irr.*; se sentir. *irr.*, *intransitive*; ressentir, *irr.* (*of emotions*); éprouver (*of emotions*).
feign, feindre, *irr.*
fellow-student, condisciple, *m.*
fertile, fertile.
fertilize, féconder.
few, peu (de); **a few**, quelques.
fickle, inconstant.
field, champ, *m.*
fifteen, quinze.
fifty, cinquante.
fight (*vb.*), se battre, *irr.*; combattre, *irr.*; livrer (*a battle*).
fight (*n.*), bataille, *f.*
figure, image, *f.*
filial, filial, *irr.*
fill, remplir (de).
filled (*adj.*), rempli (de).
final, suprême.
finally, enfin.
finance, finance, *f.*
financier, financier, *m.*
find, trouver.
fine, beau, *irr.*
finish, finir.
fire, feu, *m.*, *irr.*
fireside: by the fireside, au coin [du feu.
firmness, fermeté, *f.*
first (*adj.*), premier, *irr.*
first (*adv.*), d'abord; **at first**, d'abord **from the first**, dès l'abord.
fish, poisson, *m.*
five, cinq.

fix, fixer.
flash, transport, *m.*
flat, plat.
flatter, flatter.
flatterer, flatteur, *m.*, *irr*
flattery, flatterie, *f.*
flexible, flexible.
floating (*adj.*), flottant.
floor, plancher, *m.*
Florentine, Florentin, *m.*
flower, fleur, *f.*
fog, brouillard, *m.*
foible, défaut, *m.*
follow, suivre, *irr.*
following, suivant.
fond: **to be fond of**, aimer.
food, mets, *m. pl.*
fool, sot, *m.*, *irr.*
foolish, sot, *irr.*
foot, pied, *m.*; **on foot**, à pied.
for (*conj.*), car.
for (*prep.*), pour; **for** = *during*, pendant.
forbid, défendre à [de].
force (*vb.*), forcer.
force (*n.*), force, *f.*
forebode, présager.
forehead, front, *m.*
foresee, prévoir, *irr.*
forest, forêt, *f.*; **in the heart of the forest**, en pleine forêt.
forever, à jamais.
forget, oublier [de].
forget-me-not, myosotis, *m.*
forgive, pardonner (à).
form (*vb.*), former.
form (*n.*), forme, *f.*
former, celui-là, celle-là, ceux-là, celles-là; **former** = *old*, ancien, [*irr.*
formerly, autrefois.
fortune, fortune, *f.*; **fortune** = *property*, bien, *m.*
forty, quarante.
found, fonder.
four, quatre.
fourteenth, quatorzième.
fourth, quatrième.
fragile, fragile.
fragrance, odeur, *f.*
franc, franc, *m.*
France, France, *f.*
Francis I., François Ier
frankly, franchement.
frankness, franchise, *f.*
free, libre.
French (*n.*), Français, *m.*
French (*adj.*), français.
Frenchman, Français, *m.*
frequent (*vb.*), fréquenter.
fresh, frais, *irr.*
friend, ami, *m.*
friendship, amitié, *f.*
frightened (*adj.*), effrayé.
frightful, effrayant.
from, de; **from** (= *a point of departure in time*), à partir de; dès.
front: **in front**, devant.
frost, frimas, *m.*
frozen, glacé.
fruit, fruit, *m.*
fugitive, fugitif, *irr.*
full, plein.
fur, fourrure, *f.*
fury, fureur, *f.*
future (*n.*), avenir, *m.*
future (*adj.*), futur.

gallantry, galanterie, *f.*
galop, galop, *m.*
game, jeu, *m.*, *irr.*; gibier, *m.* (*hunting term*).
garden, jardin, *m.*
garment, habit, *m.*
gate, porte, *f.*
gather, amasser.
gay, joyeux, *irr.*

gayly, gaiement.
general, général, *m.*, *irr.*
generosity, générosité, *f.*
genius, génie, *m.*
gentle, doux, *irr.*
gentleman, monsieur, *m.*, *irr.*
gentleness, douceur, *f.*
geographer, géographe, *m.*
German (*n.*), Allemand, *m.*
gesture, geste, *m.*
get up, se lever; **to get away from**, s'éloigner (de); **to get tired**, s'ennuyer.
gift, don, *m.*
gifted (*adj.*), doué (de).
girl, fille, *f.*
give, donner; **give** = *hand to*, remettre (à), *irr.*; **to give back**, rendre; **to give rise to**, faire naître, *irr.*; **give up**, renoncer (à); **to give up to**, céder.
glad, content (de); **very glad**, bien aise [de].
gladly, volontiers.
glass, verre, *m.*
glide, glisser.
glitter, reluire, *irr.*
globe, globe, *m.*
glorious, glorieux [de], *irr.*
glory, gloire, *f.*
glove, gant, *m.*
go, *aller [*no prep.*], *irr.*; se rendre; **to go** = *to go away*, *partir [*no prep.*], *irr.*, *s'en aller, *irr.*; **to go out**, *sortir [*no prep.*], *irr.*; **to go off**, *partir [*no prep.*], *irr.*; **to go away**, *s'en aller, *irr.*; **to go down**, *descendre; **to go down on one's knees**, se mettre à genoux, *irr.*; **to go away from**, s'éloigner (de); **to go up to**, s'approcher (de); **to go get**, *aller chercher, *irr.*; **to go home**, *rentrer; **to go to bed**, se coucher; **to go to sleep**, s'endormir, *irr.*; **to go ahead**, prendre les devants, *irr.*
goal, but, *m.*
God, Dieu, *m.*
gods, dieux, *m. pl.*
gold, or, *m.*
golden, doré.
good (*adj.*), bon, *irr.*; **sage** (*of conduct*).
good (*n.*), bien, *m.*
good-by, adieu.
goodness, bonté, *f.*
Gospels, Évangiles, *m. pl.*
Gothic, gothique.
govern, gouverner.
government, gouvernement, *m.*
gown, robe, *f.*
grace, grâce, *f.*
graceful, gracieux, *irr.*
gracious, gracieux, *irr.*
gradually, peu à peu.
grand, grand.
grandfather, grand-père, *m*
grandmother, grand'mère, *f.*
granite, granit, *m.*
grate, grille, *f.*
grateful, reconnaissant (de).
gratitude, reconnaissance, *f.*; gratitude, *f.*
grave, grave.
gravely, sérieusement.
gray, gris.
great, grand.
greatness, grandeur, *f.*
Greece, Grèce, *f.*
Greek (*n.*), Grec, *m.*
Greek (*adj.*), grec, *irr.*
green, vert.
groan, plainte, *f.*; gémissement, *m*
grotesque, grotesque.
group, groupe, *m.*
gruff, bourru.

guest, convive, *m.*
guidance, conduite, *f.*
guide (*vb.*), guider.
guide (*n.*), guide, *m.*
guilty, coupable.

haberdasher, mercier, *m.*
habit: **to be in the habit**, avoir l'habitude, *irr.*
habitual, habituel, *irr.*
hair, cheveux, *m. pl.*, *irr.*
half (*adj.*), demi.
half (*n.*), moitié, *f.*
hall, salle, *f.*
hand (*vb.*), remettre (à), *irr.*
hand (*n.*), main, *f.*
handsome, beau, *irr.*
hang, pendre.
happen, *arriver; **happen**, *impersonal*, *arriver; **to happen to**, *venir à, *irr.*
happily, heureusement.
happiness, bonheur, *m.*
happy, heureux, *irr.*
hard (=*unfeeling*), insensible; **hard** (= *difficult*), difficile [de]; dur (*of a substance*); rude (*of a fight*).
hardly, à peine.
harmless, inoffensif, *irr.*
harmonious, harmonieux, *irr.*
harmony, harmonie, *f.*
harshly, durement; rudement.
harvest, récolte, *f.*; moisson, *f.*
haste: **in haste**, à la †hâte.
hasten, se †hâter [de]; s'empresser [de].
hat, chapeau, *m.*, *irr.*
hate, détester; †haïr, *irr.*
hatred, †haine, *f.*
have, avoir, *irr.*; **to have to** = *to be obliged to*, devoir [*no prep.*], *irr.*; falloir [*no prep.*], *irr.*, *impersonal*; **to have just**, venir de, *irr.*

hazy, confus.
head, tête, *f.*
health, santé, *f.*
hear, entendre; **to hear from**, avoir des nouvelles de, *irr.*
heart, cœur, *m.*
heart-rending, déchirant.
heat, chaleur, *f.*
heaven, ciel, *m.*; cieux, *m. pl.*
heavenly, céleste.
heavy, pesant.
height, †hauteur, *f.*
heir, héritier, *m.*, *irr.*
help (*vb.*), aider; **help** = *to prevent*, s'empêcher [de].
help (*n.*), aide, *f.*
helpful, secourable.
hem, bord, *m.*
henceforth, désormais.
Henry, Henri.
her, son, *irr.*
here, ici; **here is** or **here are**, voici.
hermit, ermite, *m.*
hero, †héros, *m.*
heroine, héroïne, *f.*
hers, le sien, la sienne, les siens, les siennes.
hesitate, hésiter [à].
hide, cacher; **to hide one's self**, se cacher.
high, †haut.
hire, louer.
his (*adj.*), son, *irr.*
his (*pron.*), le sien, la sienne, les siens, les siennes.
hold, tenir, *irr.*
hole, trou, *m.*
holiday, congé, *m.*
Holland, †Hollande, *f.*
home, foyer, *m.*; **at home**, à la maison; chez . . . .
honest, honnête.
honor (*vb.*), honorer.

honor (*n.*), honneur, *m.*
honorable, honorable.
hook, hameçon, *m.*
hope (*vb.*), espérer.
hope (*n.*), espérance, *f.*
horizon, horizon, *m.*
horrible, horrible.
horror, horreur, *f.*
horse, cheval, *m.*, *irr.*; **on horse-back**, à cheval.
horseman, cavalier, *m.*
hospital, hôpital, *m.*, *irr.*
hostess, hôtesse, *f.*
hot, chaud.
hour, heure, *f.*
house, maison, *f.*; **at the house of**, [chez.
household, ménage, *m.*
hover, flotter.
how, comment.
however, pourtant; cependant.
however (*adv.*), quelque.
human, humain; **human beings**, les humains, *m. pl.*
humble, humble.
humbly, humblement.
humor, humeur, *f.*
hundred, cent.
hunger, faim, *f.*
hungry: **to be hungry**, avoir faim, *irr.*
hurry, se dépêcher [de].
husband, mari, *m.*
hut, chaumière, *f.*
hypocrite, hypocrite, *m.*
hypocritical, hypocrite.

idea, idée, *f.*
ideal (*n.*), idéal, *m.*
ideal (*adj.*), idéale.
idealize, idéaliser.
idleness, oisiveté, *f.*
idol, idole, *f.*
idyl, idylle, *f.*
if, si.
ignorant, ignorant.
ill (*adj.*), malade.
ill (*adv.*), mal.
illness, maladie, *f.*
ills, maux, *m. pl.*
ill-treated, malmené.
illusion, illusion, *f.*
illustrious, illustre.
imagination, imagination, *f.*
imagine, imaginer, *transitive*; **se** figurer; s'imaginer.
imitate, imiter.
immediately, immédiatement; **aus-** [sitôt.
immense, immense.
immortal, immortel, *irr.*
impatient, impatient.
imperfection, imperfection, *f.*
implore, supplier [de].
imply, dire, *irr.*
importance, importance, *f.*
important, important, **to be important**, importer, *impersonal; subjunctive.*
impossible, impossible.
impression, impression, *f.*
improvised (*adj.*), improvisé.
imprudent, imprudent.
impudent, impudent.
in, dans; **en**; **in** *before dates*, **en.**
incident, incident, *m.*
include, compter.
income, rente, *f.*
incomparable, incomparable.
incontestable, incontestable.
inconvenience, inconvénient, *m.*
increase, augmenter.
indeed, vraiment.
indemnity, indemnité, *f.*
Indian (*adj.*), indien, *irr.*
indigence, dénûment, *m.*
indignation, soulèvement, *m.*
indiscreetly, indiscrètement.

indolence, indolence, *f.*
induce, réduire [à], *irr.*
indulgent, indulgent.
industrious, industrieux, *irr.*; laborieux, *irr.*
industry, industrie, *f.*
ineffaceable, ineffaçable.
inexhaustible, inépuisable.
inexpressible, inexprimable.
infallible, infaillible.
inflexible, inflexible.
influence, influence, *f.*
inform, prévenir, *irr.*
informed (*adj.*), informé.
ingenious, ingénieux, *irr.*
ingratitude, ingratitude, *f.*
inhabitant, habitant, *m.*
inherit, hériter (de).
injustice, injustice, *f.*
ink, encre, *f.*
innkeeper, hôtelier, *m.*
innocence, innocence, *f.*
innocent, innocent.
inquiry, recherche, *f.*; **many inquiries**, maintes recherches.
inquisitor, inquisiteur, *m.*
inscrutableness, impénétrabilité, *f.*
insect, insecte, *m.*
insignificant, frivole.
insipid, insipide.
insist, soutenir, *irr.*, *transitive*; insister, *intrans.*
instead of, au lieu de.
institute, instituer.
instruction, instruction, *f.*
intelligence, intelligence, *f.*
intemperance, intempérance, *f.*
intended (*n.*), futur, *m.*
intention, intention, *f.*
interest (*n.*), intérêt, *m.*
interest (*vb.*), intéresser.
interesting, intéressant.
interpret, interpréter.
interrupt, interrompre.
interval, intervalle, *m.*
interview, entrevue, *f.*
intimate, intime.
into, dans; en.
intoxicated (*adj.*), enivré (de); **to become intoxicated**, s'enivrer.
intoxication, ivresse, *f.*
introduce, introduire, *irr.*
intruder, importun, *m.*
intrust, confier.
invade, envahir.
invent, inventer.
invention, invention, *f.*
invitation, invitation, *f.*
invite, inviter.
iron, fer, *m.*
irresistibly, irrésistiblement.
irritate, fâcher.
island, île, *f.* **isle**, île, *f.*
it, ce (*indef. pron, used as an expletive*); il (*pers. pron.*).
Italian (*n.*), Italien, *m.*, *irr.*
Italian (*adj.*), italien, *irr.*
Italy, Italie, *f.*
its, son, *irr.*

January, janvier.
jealous, jaloux, *irr.*
jester, bouffon, *m.*
Jew, Juif, *m.*, *irr.*
jewel, bijou, *m.*, *irr.*
Joan of Arc, Jeanne d'Arc.
join, rejoindre, *irr.*
joke, plaisanterie, *f.*
Josephine, Joséphine.
journey, voyage, *m.*
joy, joie, *f.*
joyously, joyeusement.
judge (*vb.*), juger.
judge (*n.*), juge, *m.*
judgment, jugement, *m.*
July, juillet.
just, juste.

keen, vif, *irr.*
keep, garder; **to keep from**, empêcher [de]; **to keep up**, entretenir, *irr.*
kill, tuer.
kind (*n.*), sorte, *f.*; genre, *m.*
kind (*adj.*), bon, *irr.*
kindly, avec bonté.
kindness, bienveillance, *f.*
king, roi, *m.*
kingdom, royaume, *m.*
kiss, baiser.
kitchen, cuisine, *f.*
knee, genou, *m.*, *irr.*
kneel down, s'agenouiller.
knife, couteau, *m.*, *irr.*
knight, chevalier, *m.*
knighthood, chevalerie, *f.*
knock, frapper.
know, savoir [*no prep.*], *irr.*; **to know** = *to be acquainted with*, connaître, *irr.*
known (*adj.*), connu.

label, étiquette, *f.*
laboriously, péniblement.
lace, dentelle, *f.*
lack, manquer (de).
lady, dame, *f.*; **young lady**, demoiselle, *f.*
lamb, brebis, *f.*, *irr.*; agneau, *m.*, *irr.*
lamp, lampe, *f.*
land, déposer, *transitive*; aborder, *intransitive*.
landau, landau, *m.*
language, langue, *f.*; langage, *m.*
languish, languir.
large, gros, *irr.*; grand.
last (*vb.*), durer.
last (*adj.*), dernier, *irr.*; **at last**, enfin; à la fin.
late, tard,
lately, dernièrement.
Latin, latin, *m.*; **Latin Quarter**, quartier Latin, *m.*
latter, celui-ci, celle-ci, ceux-ci celles-ci.
laudable, louable.
laugh, rire, *irr.*
laughter, rire, *m.*
law, loi, *f.*; **law** = *profession*, le droit.
lawyer, avocat, *m.*
lay, poser.
laziness, paresse, *f.*
lazy, paresseux, *irr.*
lead (*n.*), plomb, *m.*
lead (*vb.*), mener; conduire, *irr.*; **lead back**, ramener.
leader, chef, *m.*
league, lieue, *f.*
learn, apprendre [à], *irr.*
learning (*n.*), instruction, *f.*; savoir, *m.* (*knowledge acquired*).
least (*adj.*), moindre; **the least**, le moins.
leave, laisser (*a person* or *thing*); quitter (*a person* or *place*); *sortir de, *irr.* (*come out of a place*).
leg, jambe, *f.*
legacy, legs, *m.*, *sing.*
legitimate, légitime.
lend, prêter.
less, moins de; moins (*adv. of degree*).
lessen, diminuer.
lesson, leçon, *f.*
lest (*conj.*), que, *subjunctive*.
let, laisser [*no prep.*].
letter, lettre, *f.*
lettuce, laitue, *f.*
liberality, libéralité, *f.*
liberty, liberté, *f.*
library, bibliothèque, *f.*
lie (*n.*), mensonge, *m.*
lie down, se coucher.

lieutenant: **second lieutenant**, lieutenant en second, *m.*
life, vie, *f.*
life-like, vivant.
lift, élever; **to lift up**, soulever.
light (*vb.*), allumer.
light (*adj.*), léger, *irr.*
light (*n.*), lumière, *f.*
like (*vb.*), aimer [à]; **like** = *wish*, vouloir [*no prep.*], *irr.*; **like** = *think of*, trouver; **like** = *to delight in*, se plaire (à), *irr.*
like (*adv.*), comme.
line, ligne, *f.*
linen, toile, *f.*
link, anneau, *m.*, *irr.*
lion-tamer, dompteur, *m.*
lip, lèvre, *f.*
listen, écouter [*no prep.*], *transitive.*
literal, littéral, *irr.*
literary, littéraire; **literary note**, note littéraire, *f.*
literature, littérature, *f.*
little (*adj.*), petit; **little** = *not much*, peu de.
little (*pron.*), peu; **a little**, un peu (de).
little (*adv.*), peu; **little by little**, peu à peu.
live, vivre, *irr.*; **live** = *reside*, résider, demeurer; **to live in**, habiter [*no prep.*]; **to live well**, faire bonne chère, *irr.*; **long live**, Vive!
lively, vif, *irr.*
livre, livre, *f.*
loaf, or **loaf of bread**, pain, *m.*
locality, local, *m.*, *irr.*
lodge, loger.
loftiness, élévation, *f.*
London, Londres.
lonesome: **to be lonesome**, s'ennuyer.
long, (*adj.*), long, *irr.*
long (*adv.*), longtemps; **a long time**, longtemps; **as long as**, aussi longtemps que.
long (*vb.*), aspirer [à].
longer (*adv.*), plus longtemps.
look (*vb.*), regarder; **to look at**, regarder; **to look for**, chercher; **to look upon**, regarder.
look (*n.*), air, *m.*
lord, seigneur, *m.*; **my lord**, monseigneur.
lose, perdre; **to lose one's self** or **one's way**, s'égarer.
lot, lot, *m.*; sort, *m.*
loud, † haut.
louis, louis, *m.*
Louvre, Louvre, *m.*
love (*n.*), amour, *m.*; **in love with**, amoureux (de); épris (de).
love (*vb.*), aimer; chérir; **to love to**, aimer [à].
lovely, charmant.
lover, amoureux, *m.*, *irr.*; amant, *m.*
loving, aimant.
lower, inférieur.
loyal, constant.
luck: **bad luck**, le guignon.
lucrative, lucratif, *irr.*
lull, bercer.
luminous, lumineux, *irr.*
lunch, déjeuner, *m.*
Lyons, Lyon.

machine, machine, *f.*
madam, madame.
madrigal, madrigal, *m.*, *irr.*
magnificent, magnifique.
majesty, majesté, *f.*
make, faire [*no prep.*], *irr.*; **to make fun of**, se moquer (de); se rire (de), *irr.*; **to make happy**, rendre heureux; **to make haste**, se dépêcher [de]; **to make a trip**, faire un voyage, *irr.*

make (*n.*), modèle, *m.*
malady, maladie, *f.*
mamma, maman.
man, homme, *m.*
manage, savoir [*no prep.*], *irr.*
manly, mâle.
manner, manière, *f.*
manners, façons, *f. pl.*
manufacture, fabriquer.
many, beaucoup (de); bien des; maintes; **so many**, tant (de); **a great many**, beaucoup (de); beaucoup (*without the noun*); **how many**, combien (de).
marble, marbre, *m.*
march, marche, *f.*
mare, jument, *f.*
mariner, marin, *m.*
Mark: **Saint Mark**, Saint-Marc.
mark, marquer.
marriage, mariage, *m.*; **love marriage**, mariage d'amour, *m.*
marry, marier; épouser; **marry again**, se remarier.
Marseilles, Marseille.
marvel, merveille, *f.*
Mary, Marie.
Mass, messe, *f.*; **Mass-book**, livre [de messe, *m.*
massacre (*vb.*), massacrer.
massacre (*n.*), massacre, *m.*
master, maître, *m.*
masterpiece, chef-d'œuvre, *m.*
match, parti, *m.*
matter, affaire, *f.*
matters: **in matters**, en matière.
mature, mûr.
maxim, maxime, *f.*
may (= *be able*), pouvoir [*no prep.*], *irr.*
mean (*vb.*), vouloir dire, *irr.*
mean (*adj.*), méchant.
means (*n.*), moyen, *m.*
meanwhile, cependant.
mediator, médiateur, *m.*, *irr.*
meet, rencontrer; rejoindre, *irr.* (*by appointment*); se réunir (*of a society*).
meeting (*n.*), réunion, *f.*
melancholy, mélancolie, *f.*
memory, mémoire, *f.*; **memory** = *remembrance*, souvenir, *m.*
men: **young men**, jeunes gens, *m. pl.*; **old men**, vieillards, *m. pl.*; **men of letters**, hommes de lettres, *m. pl.*
merchant, négociant, *m.*; marchand, *m.*
mere, simple.
merit, mérite, *m.*
method, procédé, *m.*
metre, mètre, *m.*
middle, milieu, *m.*
midst: **in the midst**, au milieu.
midwinter: **in midwinter**, en plein hiver.
mild, doux, *irr.*
military, militaire.
milk, lait, *m.*
mind, esprit, *m.*
mine, le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes.
mineral, minéral, *m.*, *irr.*
mingled with, mêlé (de).
minister, ministre, *m.*; **prime minister**, premier ministre, *m.*
minority, minorité, *f.*
minute, minute, *f.*
miracle, miracle, *m.*
mirror, glace, *f.*
mischievous, malicieux, *irr.*
miser, avare, *m.*
misery, misère, *f.*
misfortune, malheur, *m.*
miss, manquer [de]; **to miss the road**, se tromper de route.
mist, brume, *f.*

mistake, faute, *f.*
mistaken : **to be mistaken**, se tromper.
mix, mêler (de).
model, modèle, *m.*
modern, moderne.
modest, modeste.
modestly, modestement.
moment, moment, *m.*; **but a moment since**, tout à l'heure; **from that moment**, à partir de ce moment.
money, argent, *m.*
monotonous, monotone.
month, mois, *m.*
monument, monument, *m.*
moon, lune, *f.*
moral, moral, *irr.*
morally, moralement.
morals, mœurs, *f. pl.*
more (*adv. of degree*), plus; **not any more**, ne . . . plus.
more (*pron. and adj.*), plus (de); davantage; **not any more, no more**, ne . . . plus (de).
moreover, du reste.
morning, matin, *m.* (*considered as a unit*); matinée, *f.* (*considered in detail*).
mortal, mortel, *irr.*
mosaic, mosaïque, *f.*
Moses, Moïse.
moss, mousse, *f.*
most (*pron. and adj.*), le plus (de); la plupart (de *or* du, de la, des).
most (*adv.*), plus.
mother, mère, *f.*
mother-in-law, belle-mère, *f.*
motionless, immobile.
motive, motif, *m.*
mould, façonner.
mount, *monter.
mountain, montagne, *f.*
mountainous, montagneux, *irr.*
mourn, pleurer, *transitive.*
mouse, souris, *f.*
mouth, bouche, *f.*
move, se mouvoir, *irr.*
movement, mouvement, *m.*
much, beaucoup (de); **as much**, autant (de); **as much as**, autant que; **how much**, combien (de); **too much**, trop (de); **so much**, tant (de); **very much**, beaucoup.
much (*adv. of degree*), beaucoup.
museum, musée, *m.*
music, musique, *f.*
musician, musicien, *m.*, *irr.*
must, devoir [*no prep.*], *irr.*; falloir [*no prep.*], *irr.*; *impersonal.*
mutually, mutuellement.
my, mon, *irr.*
mystery, mystère, *m.*

nail, ongle, *m.*
name, nom, *m.*
named, nommé.
Napoleon, Napoléon.
nation, nation, *f.*
national, national, *irr.*
native, natal.
natural, naturel, *irr.*
naturally, naturellement.
naturalness, naturel, *m.*
nature, nature, *f.*
navy, marine, *f.*
near, près de; **quite near**, tout près de.
neat, net, *irr.*
necessary, nécessaire; **to be necessary**, falloir [*no prep.*], *irr.*; *impersonal.*
necessity, nécessité, *f.*
neck, cou, *m.*
necklace, collier, *m.*

need (*vb.*), avoir besoin [de], *irr.*; falloir [*no prep.*], *irr.*; *impersonal.*
need (*n.*), besoin, *m.*
neglect (*vb.*), négliger.
negligence, négligence, *f.*
negro, nègre, *m.*, *irr.*
neighbor, voisin, *m.*
neither, ne . . . ni; **neither . . . nor**, ne . . . ni . . . ni.
never, ne . . . jamais; *without verb*, jamais.
nevertheless, cependant.
new, nouveau, *irr.*
news, nouvelles, *f. pl.*; nouvelle, *f. sing.*
newspaper, journal, *m.*, *irr.*
next, prochain.
niece, nièce, *f.*
night, nuit, *f.*; **last night**, hier au soir.
nightingale, rossignol, *m.*
nightmare, cauchemar, *m.*
nine, neuf.
no (*adj.*), ne . . . aucun; ne . . . pas de; nul . . . ne; pas un; **no one**, ne . . . personne, *m.*; nul . . . ne, *m.*; **no more**, ne . . . plus (de).
no (*adv.*), non.
noble (*adj.*), noble.
noble (*n.*), noble, *m.*
nobleman, gentilhomme, *m. sing.*; gentilshommes, *m. pl.*
nobleness, noblesse, *f.*
nobody, ne . . . personne, *m.*
noise, bruit, *m.*
nonchalance, nonchalance, *f.*
none, aucun . . . ne.
nor, ni.
Normandy, Normandie, *f.*
nose, nez, *m.*
not, ne . . . pas; ne . . . point.
not that (*conj.*), non pas que, *subjunctive.*
note, billet, *m.*
nothing, ne . . . rien, *m.*; *without verb*, rien; **nothing but**, rien que.
notice, remarquer; s'apercevoir, *irr.*
novel, roman, *m.*
now, maintenant; à present; **until now**, jusque-là.
number, nombre, *m.*
numerous, nombreux, *irr.*
nut, amande, *f.*

O, ô.
oak, chêne, *m.*
obedient, obéissant.
obey, obéir (à).
object, objet, *m.*; **object** = *aim*, but, *m.*
oblige, obliger [de].
obscure, obscure.
obscurity, obscurité, *f.*
observe, observer.
observer, observateur, *m.*, *irr.*
obstacle, obstacle, *m.*
obtain, obtenir, *irr.*
occasion, occasion, *f.*
occupation, occupation, *f.*
occupy, occuper; habiter (*a house*); **to occupy one's self**, s'occuper.
ocean, océan, *m.*
October, octobre.
odious, odieux, *irr.*
of, de.
offer, offrir à [de], *irr.*
offend, offenser.
offence, offense, *f.*
office, charge, *f.*
often, souvent.
oh, oh.
oil, huile, *f.*
old, vieux, *irr.*; âgé.
old: **to be . . . years old**, avoir . . . ans, *irr.*
omelet, omelette, *f.*

on, sur.
once, une fois; **all at once**, tout à coup; **at once, à la fois**; **at once** = *immediately*, aussitôt: sur-le-champ.
one (*numeral*), un, une.
one (*pron.*), on; **the one** (*distinguished from "the other"*), l'un, l'une; **the one** (*dem.*), celui, celle, ceux, celles; **this one, that one**, celui-ci, celui-là, celle-ci, celle-là; **which one** or **ones**, lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles; **one another**, les uns, les autres, les unes, les autres; se.
only (*adv.*), ne . . . que; seulement; **not only**, non seulement.
only (*adj.*), seul.
open, ouvrir, *irr.*
opera, opéra, *m.*
operation, opération, *f.*
opinion, opinion, *f.*
opportunity, occasion, *f.*
oppose, opposer.
or, ou.
orator, orateur, *m.*
ordain, ordonner.
order, ordre, *m.*; **in order that**, afin que, *subjunctive*; **in order to**, afin de, *before infinitive*.
origin, origine, *f.*
originality, originalité, *f.*
Orleans, Orléans.
ornament, ornement, *m.*
orphan, orphelin, *m.*
other (*adj. and pron.*), autre.
others, autrui, *m. sing.*, *indefinite*.
ought, devoir [*no prep.*], *irr.*
our, notre, *irr.*
ours, le nôtre, la nôtre, les nôtres, *m. and f. pl.*
out of doors, dehors.
overcome, surmonter.
overwhelm (= *with a favorable meaning*), combler (de); **overwhelm** (= *with an unfavorable meaning*), accabler (de).
owe, devoir (à), *irr.*
owl, † hibou, *m.*, *irr.*
own, propre.

package, paquet, *m.*
page, page, *f.*; **page** = *boy*, page, *m.*
pain, causer du chagrin.
paint, peindre, *irr.*
painting, peinture, *f.*
painter, peintre, *m.*
pair: **dozen pair**, douzaine de [paires, *f.*
palace, palais, *m.*
pamphlet, brochure, *f.*
Pantheon, Panthéon, *m.*
paper, papier, *m.*
Paradise Lost, Paradis perdu, *m.*
parent, parent, *m.*
park, parc, *m.*
part (*n.*), partie, *f.*; **the greater part**, la plus grande partie; **for the most part**, pour la plupart; **to make part of**, faire partie de, *irr.*; **on the part of**, de la part de.
part from, se séparer de.
partridge, perdrix, *f.*
parvenu, parvenu, *m.*
pass, passer; **pass** = *to occur*, se [passer.
passion, passion, *f.*
passionate, passionné.
path, chemin, *m.*
pathetic (*n.*), touchant, *m.*
pathetic (*adj.*), pathétique.
patience, patience, *f.*
patient (*n.*), malade, *m.*
patiently, patiemment.
pay (*n.*), solde, *f.*
pay (*vb.*), payer.
peace, paix, *f.*
peacefully, tranquillement.

pear, poire, *f.*
peasant, paysan, *m.*, *irr.*
pebble, caillou, *m.*, *irr.*
peculiar, original, *irr.*
peculiarity, ridicule, *m.*
pecuniary, pécuniaire.
pen, plume, *f.*
pension, pension, *f.*
people, on, *m. sing.* (*always used nominatively, and standing for* **people** *in a vague, general sense; requires singular verb*); gens, *m. and f. pl.* (*translates* **people**, *when this word stands for a number, class or group of individuals; for agreement of adjectives, see grammar*); **people** = *nation* or *populace*, peuple, *m. sing.*; **country people**, gens du pays, *m. pl.*; **people of society**, gens du monde, *m. pl.*
perceive, apercevoir, *irr.*; s'apercevoir, *irr.*
perfect (*vb.*), perfectionner.
perfect (*adj.*), parfait.
perfection, perfection, *f.*
perfectly, parfaitement.
perfidious, perfide.
perform, remplir.
performance, représentation, *f.*
performer, exécutant, *m.*
perfume (*vb.*), embaumer.
perfume (*n.*), parfum, *m.*
perhaps, peut-être.
perish, périr.
permanent, durable.
permission, permission, *f.*
permit, permettre à [de], *irr.*
perseverance, persévérance, *f.*
persistent, persistant.
person, personne, *f.*
personage, personnage, *m.*
personal, personnel, *irr.*
persuade, persuader (à).
persuasive, persuasif, *irr.*
Peter the Cruel, Pierre le Cruel.
Peter the Great, Pierre le Grand.
phase, phase, *f.*
philosophy, philosophie, *f.*
physiognomy, physionomie, *f.*
physiologist, physiologiste, *m.*
piano, piano, *m.*
pick, cueillir, *irr.*; **to pick out**, choisir; **to pick up**, ramasser; **to pick up** = *save* or *rescue*, recueillir, *irr.*
picture, tableau, *m.*, *irr.*
picturesque, pittoresque.
piece, morceau, *m.*, *irr.*; **piece** = *play*, pièce, *f.*
pious, pieux, *irr.*
piqued, piqué.
pistole, pistole, *f.*
pitiless, impitoyable (pour).
pity, pitié, *f.*; **it is a pity**, c'est dommage, *subjunctive.*
place, place, *f.*; endroit, *m.*
plain, plaine, *f.*
plan, plan, *m.*
planet, planète, *f.*
plant, plante, *f.*
play (*vb.*), jouer.
play (*n.*), pièce, *f.*
plaything, joujou, *m.*, *irr.*
please (*vb.*), plaire (à), *irr.*; **if you please**, veuillez (*before the verb*).
pleased with, content (de).
pleasure, plaisir, *m.*
ploughman, laboureur, *m.*
Plutarch, Plutarque.
poet, poète, *m.*
poetic, poétique.
poetry, poésie, *f.*
point, point, *m.*
point out, désigner.
poison, poison, *m.*

polite, poli.
politely, poliment.
political, politique.
poor, pauvre.
poorly, mal.
Pope, pape, *m.*
popular, populaire.
popularized, popularisé.
populated, peuplé.
porter, huissier, *m.*
portrait, portrait, *m.*
pose, se poser.
position, position, *f.*
possess, posséder.
possible, possible.
Post Office, poste, *f.*
poverty, pauvreté, *f.*
powder, poudre, *f.*
power, pouvoir, *m.*
powerful, puissant.
prairie, prairie, *f.*
praise (*vb.*), vanter; louer.
praise (*n.*), éloges, *m. pl.*
pray, prier.
prayer, prière, *f.*; **Evening Prayer**, Prière du soir, *f.*
precaution, précaution, *f.*
precede, précéder.
precious, précieux, *irr.*
preciously, précieusement.
precisely, précisément.
precision, précision, *f.*
precocious, précoce.
prefer, aimer mieux; préférer.
preference, préférence, *f.*
prepare, préparer; **to prepare one's self**, se préparer [à].
presence, présence, *f.*; **presence of mind**, sang-froid, *m.*
present (*n.*), présent, *m.*; cadeau, *m.*, *irr.*
present (*adj.*), présent.
present (*vb.*), présenter; **to present one's self**, se présenter; **to present with**, remettre (à), *irr.*
presentation, représentation, *f.*
presentiment, pressentiment, *m.*
preserve, conserver; préserver.
president, président, *m.*
press, presser.
pretend, prétendre; **to pretend to** faire semblant de, *irr.*
pretension, prétention, *f.*
pretentious, prétentieux, *irr.*
pretext, prétexte, *m.*
pretty, joli.
prevent, empêcher [de].
prey, proie, *f.*
price, prix, *m.*
pride, orgueil, *m.*
priest, prêtre, *m.*
prince, prince, *m.*; **Prince of Wales**, prince de Galles, *m.*
princess, princesse, *f.*
principal (*n.*), principal, *m.*, *irr.*
principal (*adj.*), principal, *irr.*
prison, prison, *f.*
prisoner, prisonnier, *m.*, *irr.*
private, particulier, *irr.*; **in private**, en particulier; **private life**, vie privée, *f.*
privation, privation, *f.*
prize, estimer.
probable, probable.
proclaim, proclamer.
procure, procurer.
prodigality, prodigalité, *f.*
prodigious, prodigieux, *irr.*
produce, produire, *irr.*
production, production, *f.*
profess, professer.
profession, profession, *f.*
professor, professeur, *m.*
profit, profiter à; **profit by**, profiter [de.
profound, profond.

progress, progrès, *m. pl.*
progressive, progressif, *irr.*
project, projet, *m.*
prolong, prolonger.
promise (*vb.*), promettre à [de], *irr.*
promise (*n.*), promesse, *f.*
promptly, promptement.
pronounce, prononcer.
proof, preuve, *f.*
properly, proprement.
property, biens, *m. pl.*
prophet, prophète, *m.*
proportion, proportion, *f.*
propose, proposer [de].
proposition, proposition, *f.*
prose, prose, *f.*
prosperity, prospérité, *f.*
protect, protéger.
protection, protection, *f*
protector, protecteur, *m.*, *irr.*
protégé, protégé, *m.*
Protestant, protestant, *m.*
proud, fier, *irr.*
prove, prouver; **to prove one's self**, se montrer.
Provence, Provence, *f.*
provide, pourvoir (de), *irr.*
provided (*conj.*), pourvu que, *subjunctive;* moyennant que, *subjunctive.*
provided (*adj.*), pourvu (de).
providence, providence, *f.*
province, province, *f.*
provision, provision, *f.*
provost, prévôt, *m.*
prudence, prudence, *f.*
psychologist, psychologue, *m.*
public (*n.*), public, *m.*
public (*adj.*), public, *irr.*
publication, publication, *f.*
publish, publier.
publisher, libraire, *m.*
pug, camus.
punish, punir.
pupil, élève, *m.;* écolier, *m.*, *irr.;* prunelle, *f.* (*of the eye*).
pure, pur.
purify, purifier.
purity, pureté, *f.*
purse, bourse, *f.*
pursue, poursuivre, *irr.*
put, mettre, *irr.;* **to put back**, remettre, *irr.*

quality, qualité, *f.*
quantity, quantité, *f.*
quarrel, se brouiller.
quarter, quartier, *m.*
queen, reine, *f.*
question (*vb.*), interroger.
question : it is a question of, il s'agit de.
quickly, vite.
quiet, apaiser.
quietly, tranquillement.
quite (*adv.*), tout à fait.
quite (= *all*), tout, toute, toutes.
quote, citer.

race, race, *f.*
rain (*vb.*), pleuvoir, *irr.; impersonal.*
rain (*n.*), pluie, *f.*
raise, lever; **to raise** = *to bring up*, élever; **to raise** = *to elevate*, élever; **to raise one's self**, s'élever.
rank, rang, *m.;* **rank** = *military rank*, grade, *m.*
ransom one's self, se racheter.
ransom (*n.*), rançon, *f.*
rapid, rapide.
rapidly, rapidement.
rare, rare.
rarely, rarement
rat, rat, *m.*

rather, plutôt; **rather** = *somewhat*, assez.
ravishing, ravissant.
raw, naturel, *irr.*
reach (*vb.*), atteindre (à), *irr.*; *parvenir (à), *irr.*
read, lire, *irr.*; **to read over**, relire, *irr.*
reading, lecture, *f.*
ready, prêt.
real (*n.*), réel, *m.*
real (*adj.*), vrai; véritable.
reality, réalité, *f.*
realize, réaliser.
really, véritablement.
reap, recueillir, *irr.*
reappear, reparaître, *irr.*
reascend, *remonter.
reason, raison, *f.*
reasonable, raisonnable.
reassure, rassurer.
recall, rappeler.
receive, recevoir, *irr.*
recite, réciter.
recognize, reconnaître, *irr.*
recommend, recommander.
recommendation, recommandation, *f.*
reconcile, réconcilier.
recreation, récréation, *f.*
red, rouge.
redeem one's self, se racheter.
redouble, redoubler.
reduce, réduire, *irr.*
reflect, réfléter; **reflect** = *think*, réfléchir.
reflection, réflexion, *f.*
refuse, refuser [de].
regard, regarder.
regiment, régiment, *m.*
regret (*vb.*), regretter [de].
regret (*n.*), regret, *m.*
regular, régulier, *irr.*
reign (*vb.*), régner.
reign (*n.*), règne, *m.*
rejoice, se réjouir [de].
relate, raconter.
relative, parent, *m.*
relic, relique, *f.*
relieve, soulager.
religion, religion, *f.*
remain, *rester.
remains, restes, *m. pl.*
remark (*vb.*), remarquer.
remark (*n.*), réflexion, *f.*
remember, se rappeler; **se souvenir** (de), *irr.*
remind, faire l'effet de, *irr.*
remorse, remords, *m.*
render, rendre.
repaid, remboursé (de).
repair, réparer; **repair** = *go*, se rendre.
repast, repas, *m.*
repeat, répéter.
repelled (*adj.*), repoussé.
repent, se repentir (de), *irr.*
replace, remplacer.
reply, répondre; répliquer.
repose, reposer.
represent, représenter.
reproduce, reproduire, *irr.*
reprove, reprendre (sur), *irr.*
republic, république, *f.*
reputation, réputation, *f.*
request, demande, *f.*
require, exiger.
reread, relire, *irr.*
resemble, ressembler (à).
resentment, ressentiment, *m.*
resignation, résignation, *f.*
resist, résister (à).
resolute, résolu.
resolve, résoudre [de], *irr.*
resource, ressource, *f.*
respect (*vb.*), respecter.

respect (*n.*), respect, *m.*
rest (*vb.*), se reposer.
rest (*n.*), repos, *m.*
retain, retenir, *irr.*
retire, se retirer.
retreat, retraite, *f.*
return (= *give back*), rendre; **return** = *go back*, *retourner; **return** = *come back*, *revenir, *irr.*
reveal, révéler; livrer (*a secret*).
revery, rêverie, *f.*
revive, ranimer.
Revolution, Révolution, *f.*
reward, récompenser.
rhetoric, rhétorique, *f.*
rhyme, rime, *f.*
rich, riche.
riches, richesses, *f. pl.*
richness, richesse, *f.*
rid: **to get rid of** or **to rid one's self of**, se débarasser (de).
ride, monter.
rider, cavalier, *m.*
ridicule, ridicule, *m.*
ridiculous, ridicule.
right (*n.*), droit, *m.*; **to be right**, avoir raison, *irr.*; **right away**, tout de suite.
ring, bague, *f.*
ripen, mûrir.
rise, se lever; s'élever (*ascend*).
risk, risque, *m.*
rival (*n.*), rival, *m.*, *irr.*
rival (*adj.*), rival, *irr.*
river, fleuve, *m.*
road, chemin, *m.*
roam, rôder.
rob, voler.
robust, robuste.
rock, rocher, *m.*
role, rôle, *m.*
roll, rouler.
rolling (*n.*), roulement, *m.*
Roman (*n.*), Romain, *m.*
Roman (*adj.*), romain.
roof, toit, *m.*
room, salle, *f.*; chambre, *f.*
root, racine, *f.*
rose, rose, *f.*; **wild rose**, rose de buisson, *f.*; **rose leaf**, feuille de [rose, *f.*
rosy, vermeil, *irr.*
round, rond.
royal, royal, *irr.*
rudeness, impolitesse, *f.*
rugged, rugueux, *irr.*
ruin (*vb.*), perdre.
ruin (*n.*), ruine, *f.*
rule, règle, *f.*
run, courir, *irr.*; **to run away**, se sauver.
Russia, Russie, *f.*

sacrifice (*vb.*), sacrifier.
sacrifice (*n.*), sacrifice, *m.*
sad, triste.
sadden, attrister.
sadness, tristesse, *f.*
saint, saint, *m.*; **Saint Bartholomew**, Saint-Barthélemy.
salient, saillant.
salon, salon, *m.*
salutary, salutaire.
same, même (*before the noun*).
sanction, sanctionner.
satisfaction, satisfaction, *f.*
satisfied (*adj.*), satisfait (de).
satisfy, contenter.
Saturday, samedi.
savage, sauvage, *m.*
savant, savant, *m.*
save, sauver.
savings, épargnes, *f. pl.*
say, dire, *irr.*; **that is to say**, c'est à-dire.
scaffold, échafaud, *m.*
scale, escalader.

scandal, scandale, *m.*
scandalous, scandaleux, *irr.*
scarcely, à peine.
scene, scène, *f.*
scholar, savant, *m.*
school, école, *f.*
science, science, *f.*
scold, gronder.
Scotch, Écossais, *m.*
scullion, marmiton, *m.*
search: **in search of**, à la recherche de.
season, saison, *f.*
seat, place, *f.*
seated, assis.
second, second.
secret (*n.*), secret, *m.*
secret (*adj.*), secret, *irr.*
see, voir [*no prep.*], *irr.*; **to see again**, revoir, *irr.*; **to see once more**, revoir, *irr.*
seek, chercher [à]; **arrive to seek**, *arriver chercher.
seem, sembler [*no prep.*]; paraître [*no prep.*], *irr.*
seize, saisir.
seldom, rare.
select, choisir.
self, soi-même.
selfish, égoïste.
selfishness, égoïsme, *m.*
sell, vendre.
send, envoyer, *irr.*; **to send for**, faire venir, *irr.*; faire appeler, *irr.*; **to send away**, renvoyer, *irr.*
sense, sens, *m.*
sensibility, sensibilité, *f.*
sensible, sensé.
sensitive, sensible.
sentiment, sentiment, *m.*
separation, séparation, *f.*
series, suite, *f. sing.*
serious, grave; sérieux, *irr.*
seriously, sérieusement; gravement.
serpent, serpent, *m.*
servant, serviteur, *m.*; domestique, *m.*
serve, servir, *irr.*
service, service, *m.*
set foot in, mettre les pieds au, *irr.*
set off (*adj.*), soutenu.
settle, régler (*a bill*); **to settle down**, s'établir (à).
seven, sept.
seventeenth, dix-septième.
seventy-eight, soixante-dix-huit.
seventy-five, soixante-quinze.
several, plusieurs.
severe, sévère.
shade, nuance, *f.* (*of color*); ombre, *f.*
shadow, ombre, *f.*
shame, †honte, *f.*
shameful, †honteux, *irr.*
shape, faire [*no prep.*], *irr.*
share, partager.
sheet, drap, *m.*
shell, noyau, *m.*, *irr.*
shelter, abri, *m.*
shepherd, berger, *m.*; pasteur, *m.*
shepherdess, bergère, *f.*
shoe, soulier, *m.*
shop, boutique, *f.*
short, bref, *irr.*
shoulder, épaule, *f.*
show, montrer.
shut up, enfermer; **to shut one's self up**, s'enfermer.
shy, faire un écart, *irr.*
side: **by the side of**, à côté de; **by the fireside**. au coin du feu.
siege, siège, *m.*
silence, silence. *m.*
silent, silencieux, *irr.*
silk, soie, *f.*
similar, semblable.
simple, simple.

simpleton, sot, *m.*, *irr.*
simplicity, simplicité, *f.*
sin, péché, *m.*
since (*adv.*), depuis; **but a moment since**, tout à l'heure.
since (*conj.*), puisque, depuis que.
since (*prep.*), depuis.
sincere, sincère.
sincerity, sincérité, *f.*
sing, chanter.
single, seul; **a single one**, un seul.
singular, singulier, *irr.*
sir, monsieur.
Sire, Sire.
sister, sœur, *f.*; **sister** = *nun*, religieuse *or* sœur, *f.*
sit down at, se mettre (à), *irr.*; **to sit up**, veiller.
site, emplacement, *m.*
situated (*adj.*), situé.
situation, situation, *f.*
six, six.
sixteen, seize.
sketch, ébauche, *f.*
skill, habileté, *f.*
sky, ciel, *m.*, *irr.*
slave, esclave, *m.*
sleep (*n.*), sommeil, *m.*
sleep (*vb.*), dormir, *irr.*
sleepy: **to be sleepy**, avoir sommeil, *irr.*
small, petit.
smallest, moindre.
smile (*vb.*), sourire, *irr.*; **to smile upon**, sourire (à), *irr.*
smile (*n.*), sourire, *m.*
smoke, fumer.
snow, neige, *f.*
so (*adv.*), si; **so that**, de sorte que, *subjunctive*; afin que, *subjunctive*; pour que, *subjunctive*.
soap, savon, *m.*
society, société, *f.*
Socrates, Socrate.
soil, sol, *m.*
sojourn, séjour, *m.*
soldier, soldat, *m.*
solicitor, solliciteur, *m.*, *irr.*
solitary, solitaire.
solitude, solitude, *f.*
Solomon, Salomon.
somber, sombre. [(*emphatic*).
some (*adj.*), de + def. art.; quelque
some (*pron.*), en; quelques-uns, quelques-unes (*emphatic*).
somebody, on; quelqu'un, *m.*
some one, quelqu'un, *m.*
something, quelque chose, *m.*
sometimes, quelquefois.
somewhere, quelque part.
son, fils, *m.*
son-in-law, gendre, *m.*
soon, bientôt; vite; **as soon as**, aussitôt que; dès que; sitôt que; **soon after**, peu après; **as soon as possible**, au plus tôt; **so soon**, si tôt.
sooner, plutôt; **sooner** = *earlier*, plus tôt.
sorrow, douleur, *f.*
sort, espèce, *f.*
sought after, recherché.
soul, âme, *f.*
sound, bruit, *m.*
source, source, *f.*
sow, semer.
Spain, Espagne, *f.*
Spanish, espagnol, *m.*
spare, épargner (à).
speak, parler.
special, spécial, *irr.*
spectacles, lunettes, *f. pl.*
spectator, spectateur, *m.*, *irr.*
speech, compliment, *m.*
spell, sort, *m.*
spend, dépenser; passer (*of time*)

spin, filer.
spinner, fileuse, *f.*
spirit, esprit, *m.*
splendor, splendeur, *f.*
spoil, gâter.
spring, ressort, *m.;* source, *f.* (*of water*); source, *f.* (*figuratively*).
sprite, lutin, *m.*
stage, théâtre, *m.*
stain, tache, *f.*
stairs, escalier, *m. sing.*
stand (= *endure*), supporter.
stand around, entourer.
star, étoile, *f.;* astre, *m.*
start, *partir, *irr.*
state (*vb.*), rapporter.
state (*n.*), état, *m.;* **the State**, l'État, *m.*
statute, statut, *m.*
stay, *rester; demeurer.
steeple, clocher, *m.*
step, pas, *m.*
stick (*vb.*), appliquer.
stick (*n.*), bâton, *m.*
stifle, étouffer.
still (*adv.*), encore; toujours.
stone, pierre, *f.*
stop, arrêter, *transitive;* s'arrêter, *intransitive.*
storm, orage, *m.*
stormy, orageux, *irr.*
story, histoire, *f.;* étage, *m.* (*of a house*).
straight (*adv.*), tout droit.
strange, étrange.
stratagem, stratagème, *m.*
straw, paille, *f.*
stray from, s'éloigner (de).
stream, ruisseau, *m.*, *irr.*
street, rue, *f.*
strength, force, *f.*
strewn (*adj.*), semé (de).
strike, frapper.
striking (*adj.*), frappant.
stripped (*adj.*), dépouillé.
strong, fort.
studious, studieux, *irr.*
study (*vb.*), étudier.
study (*n.*), étude, *f.*
stupid, bête.
stupidity, bêtise, *f.*
style, style, *m.;* **given style**, genre donné, *m.*
subject, sujet, *m.*
sublime (*adj.*), sublime.
sublime (*n.*), sublime, *m.*
sublimity, élévation, *f.*
subsistence, subsistance, *f.*
subtle, subtil.
succeed, réussir; **to succeed** = *come after*, succéder (à); **to succeed in**, *parvenir [à], *irr.;* réussir [à].
success, succès, *m.*
successive, successif, *irr.*
successively, successivement.
such, tel, *irr.;* pareil, *irr.;* **such** *before adj. or adv.*, si; **such a** *before a noun*, un tel, une telle; **such a** *before adj. or adv.*, un si, une si; **such as**, tel que, *irr.*
suddenly, tout à coup.
suffice, suffire, *irr.*
sufficient, suffisant.
suit, convenir (à), *irr.*
suitor, prétendu, *m.*
sulky, boudeur, *irr.*
sum, somme, *f.*
summit, sommet, *m.*
sumptuous, fastueux, *irr.*
sun, soleil, *m.*
sup, souper.
superb, superbe.
superfluous, superflu.
superior, supérieur.
supernumerary, surnuméraire.
superstition, superstition, *f.*

supper, souper, *m.*
suppose (*conj.*), supposé que, *subjunctive.*
sure, sûr.
surely, certes.
surface, surface, *f.*
surmount, surmonter.
surpass, surpasser.
surprise (*n.*), étonnement, *m.*
surprised, étonné [de]; **to be surprised**, s'étonner [de].
surround, entourer (de).
surrounded by, entouré (de).
survive, survivre (à), *irr.*
suspect, se douter; soupçonner.
suspend, suspendre.
suspicion, soupçon, *m.*
sustain, soutenir, *irr.*
swallow, avaler.
swear, jurer [de].
sweet, doux, *irr.*
sweets, gâteaux, *m. pl.*
Swiss (*n.*), Suisse, *m.*
Switzerland, Suisse, *f.*
sword, épée, *f.*
symbol, image, *f.*
symbolical, emblématique.
syntax, syntaxe, *f.*
system, méthode, *f.*

table, table, *f.*
tact, bonne grâce, *f.*
take, prendre, *irr.*; conduire, *irr.*; mener (*conduct*); porter (*carry*); **it takes**, falloir [*no prep.*], *irr.*, *impersonal*; **to take back**, ramener (*persons*); **to take along**, **to take with** or **to take to**, emmener (*persons*); **to take possession of**, s'emparer de; se saisir de; **to take a walk**, se promener; **to take part in**, prendre part à, *irr.*; **to take place**, avoir lieu, *irr.*; **to take care not to**, se bien garder de; **to take communion**, communier; **to take the trip**, faire la route, *irr.*; **to take a journey**, faire un voyage, *irr.*; **to take up one's residence**, se fixer (à); **to take refuge**, se réfugier.
talent, talent, *m.*
talk, parler; causer.
talker, causeur, *m.*, *irr.*
tall, grand.
tame, apprivoiser.
taste (*vb.*), goûter (à).
taste (*n.*), goût, *m.*
tavern, auberge, *f.*
teach, apprendre (à), *irr.*
teacher, maître, *m.*, *irr.*
teaching, enseignement, *m.*
tear (*n.*), larme, *f.*
tear away from, arracher (à); **to tear into shreds**, mettre en lambeaux, *irr.*
telegram, dépêche, *f.*
tell, dire à [de], *irr.*
temperate, modéré; sobre (*of persons*).
temple, temple, *m.*; **tower of the Temple**, tour du Temple, *f.*
tempt, tenter [de].
ten, dix.
tender, tendre.
tenderly, tendrement.
tenderness, tendresse, *f.*
Terence, Térence.
term, terme, *m.*
terrible, terrible.
terror, effroi, *m.*
testament, testament, *m.*
than, que; *before numerals*, **de.**
thank, remercier.
thanks to, grâce à.
that (*adj.*), ce, *irr.*
that (*conj.*), que.

that (*dem. pron.*), *def.*, celui, celle, ceux, celles; *indef.*, cela; **that** = *it*, ce.
that (*rel. pron.*), qui, que; **all that** or **everything that**, tout ce qui, tout ce que.
the, le, la, les.
theatre, théâtre, *m.*
their, leur, *irr.*
theirs, le leur, la leur, les leurs (*m. and f. pl.*).
then, alors (*at that time*); puis (*after that*); ensuite (*next*); donc (*so, therefore*).
there, y; là (*emphatic*); il (*expletive*); **there is, there are**, il y a; voilà (*emphatic*); **down there**, là-bas.
these (*adj.*), ces (*m. and f. pl.*).
these (*dem. pron.*), ceux, celles; ceux-ci, celles-ci (*emphatic*).
Thibet, Thibet, *m.*
thick, épais, *irr.*
thing, chose, *f.*
think, penser; **to think** = *believe*, croire [*no prep.*], *irr.*; **to think of**, penser (à).
third, troisième.
third (*n.*), tiers, *m.*
thirteen, treize.
thirteenth, treizième.
thirty, trente.
this (*adj.*), ce, *irr.*
this (*pron.*), ceci.
thoroughly: **so thoroughly**, tellement.
those (*adj.*), ces (*m. and f. pl.*).
those (*pron.*), ceux, celles; ceux-là, celles-là (*emphatic*).
though: **even though**, même.
thought, pensée, *f.*
thousand (*adj.*), mille (*invariable*).
threaten, menacer [de].
three, trois.
threshold, seuil, *m.*
through, à travers.
throw, jeter; **to throw one's self back**, se rejeter.
thus, ainsi.
thy, ton, *irr.*
tie, attacher.
time, temps, *m.*; fois, *f.* (*repetition or occasion*); **a short time**, peu de temps; **at a time**, de suite; **from this time on**, dès lors; **from time to time**, de temps en temps; **to have time to**, avoir le temps [de], *irr.*
times: **those times**, ces temps-là.
tire one's self, se fatiguer.
title, titre, *m.*
to, à (*signifying direction*); pour (*purpose*); de (*loose connective*).
to-day, aujourd'hui.
together, ensemble.
tolerant, tolérant.
tolerate, supporter.
tomb, tombeau, *m.*, *irr.*
to-morrow, demain.
tongue, langue, *f.*
too, aussi (*also*).
too (*adv. of degree*), trop; **too much** or **too many**, trop (de).
torment, tourmenter.
torrid, brûlant.
torturer, bourreau, *m.*, *irr.*
totally, absolument.
touch, toucher.
touching, touchant.
toward or **towards**, vers (*in the direction of*); envers (*with regard to*).
tradition, tradition, *f.*
tragedy, tragédie, *f.*
train (*vb.*), former.
train (*n.*), train, *m.*

traitor, traître, *m.*, *irr.*
trample upon, piétiner, *transitive.*
translation, traduction, *f.*
trap-door, trappe, *f.*
travel, voyager.
traveller, voyageur, *m.*, *irr.*
treacherous, perfide.
treasure, trésor, *m.*
treat, traiter.
tree, arbre, *m.*
tremble, trembler.
tribe, tribu, *f.*
triumph (*vb.*), triompher (de).
triumph (*n.*), triomphe, *m.*
troop or **troupe**, troupe, *f.*
trouble (*vb.*), inquiéter.
trouble (*n.*), peine, *f.*; **to have trouble in**, avoir de la peine [à], *irr.*
true, vrai.
truly, en vérité.
trunk, tronc, *m.* (*of trees*); trompe, *f.* (*of elephants*).
trust, se fier (à).
truth, vérité, *f.*; **in truth**, en vérité.
try, s'efforcer [de]; essayer [de].
try on, essayer.
tube, tuyau, *m.*, *irr.*
tulip, tulipe, *f.*
turn (*vb.*), tourner; **se tourner**, *intransitive.*
turn (*n.*), tournure, *f.*
tutor, précepteur, *m.*
twelve, douze.
twenty, vingt.
two, deux.
twofold, deux fois.
type, type, *m.*

ugliness, laideur, *f.*
ugly, laid.
unceasingly, sans cesse.
uncertain, incertain.
uncle, oncle, *m.*
unconquerable, invincible.
under, sous.
undergo, subir.
understand, comprendre, *irr.*
undertake, se livrer (à).
uneasy, inquiet, *irr.*
unexpected, inattendu.
unfavorably, défavorablement.
unfortunate (*adj.*), fâcheux, *irr.*
unfortunate (*n.*), malheureux, *m.* [*irr.*
ungrateful, ingrat.
unhappy, malheureux, *irr.*
unhealthy, malsain.
uniform, monotone.
unimportant, indifférent.
union, union, *f.*
unique, unique.
unity, union, *f.*
universal, universel, *irr.*
universe, univers, *m.*
unjust, injuste.
unjustly, injustement.
unless, à moins que, *subjunctive.*
until (*conj.*), jusqu'à ce que, *subjunctive;* en attendant que, *subjunctive.*
until (*prep.*), jusqu'à; **until now**, jusque-là.
upon, sur.
upright, droit.
use, se servir (de), *irr.*; employer
useful, utile.
useless, inutile.
uselessly, inutilement.
uselessness, désœuvrement, *m.*
usual, habituel, *irr.*
usually, ordinairement.
utter, proférer.

vague, vague.
vaguely, vaguement.

vain, vain; **in vain**, vainement.
vainglory, vaine gloire, *f.*
valet, valet de chambre, *m.*; valet.
valiant, vaillant.
valise, valise, *f.*
vanish, s'évanouir.
vanity, vanité, *f.*
vanquish, vaincre, *irr.*
variety, variété, *f.*
various, divers.
vary, varier.
vast, vaste.
vegetable, végétal, *m.*, *irr.*; légume, *m.* (*plants used as food*).
Venetian, Vénitien, *m.*, *irr.*
Venice, Venise, *f.*
venomous, venimeux, *irr.*
verdure, verdure, *f.*
veritable, véritable.
verse, vers, *m.*; **piece of verse**, pièce de vers, *f.*
versification, versification, *f.*
versifier, versificateur, *m.*
very (*adj.*), même (*after the noun*).
very (*adv.*), très; bien; fort.
vicar, curé, *m.*
vice, vice, *m.*
victim, victime, *f.*; **victim of** or **to**, en proie à.
victorious, vainqueur.
victory, victoire, *f.*
Vienna, Vienne.
view, vue, *f.*; **with a view to**, en vue de.
vigor, vigueur, *f.*
village, village, *m.*
violet, violette, *f.*
violin, violon, *m.*
violinist, violiniste, *m.*
Virgin, vierge, *f.*
virtue, vertu, *f.*
virtuoso, virtuose, *m.*
virtuous, vertueux, *irr.*
visit (*vb.*), **visiter.**
visit (*n.*), visite, *f.*
visitor, visiteur, *m.*, *irr.*
vocabulary, vocabulaire, *m.*
voice, voix, *f.*
volcano, volcan, *m.*
vowel, voyelle, *f.*
voyage, voyage, *m.*

wages, gages, *m. pl.*
wait for, attendre.
wake up, se réveiller.
walk (*vb.*), marcher.
walk (*n.*), promenade, *f.*
wall, mur, *m.*
want, vouloir [*no prep.*], *irr.*
war, guerre, *f.*
warm, chaud.
wash, laver.
waste, perdre.
watch, montre, *f.*
water (*vb.*), arroser.
water (*n.*), eau, *f.*, *irr.*
wave, flot, *m.*
way, chemin, *m.*; route, *f.*; **on the way**, en route *or* en chemin; **in such a way**, de telle sorte; **all the way**, toute la route.
weak, faible.
weakness, faiblesse, *f.*
wealth, richesse, *f.*
wear, porter; **to wear away**, user.
weary, se lasser (de), *intransitive;* fatiguer, *transitive.*
weather, temps, *m.*
wed, épouser.
week, semaine, *f.*
weep, pleurer.
weigh, peser.
well (*adv.*), bien; **as well as**, aussi bien que.
well (*interjection*), eh bien.
what (*adj.*: *int.*), quel, *irr.*

what (*adj.: indef.*), quel, *irr.*
what (*pron.: int.*), qu'est-ce qui (*subj.*); que *or* qu'est-ce que (*dir. obj.*); quoi (*obj. of prep.*); ce qui, ce que (*in indirect questions*).
what (*pron.: rel.*), ce qui, ce que.
what (*interjection*), eh quoi.
whatever (*adj.*), quel . . . que, quelle . . . que, quels . . . que, quelles . . . que.
whatever (*pron.*), quoi que.
wheat, blé, *m.*
wheel, rouage, *m.*
when, quand; lorsque (*not used in direct questions*).
whence, d'où.
where, où.
whether, que . . . que; **whether** = [*if*, si.
which (*adj.: int.*), quel.
which (*pron.: int.*), lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles.
which (*pron.: rel.*), qui (*subj.*); que (*obj. of verb*); lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles (*obj. of prep.*); **of which**, dont; **after which**, après quoi.
while, pendant que; *before present participle*, en; **a little while**, un peu.
whilst, tandis que.
whirlwind, tempête, *f.*
white, blanc, *irr.*
who (*int.*), qui *or* qui est-ce qui.
who (*rel.*), qui.
whoever, quiconque.
whole (*adj.*), tout, toute; **the whole** tout le, toute la.
whole (*n.*), le tout.
wholly, tout à fait.
whom (*int.*), qui *or* qui est-ce que.
whom (*rel.*), que (*obj. of verb*); **qui** (*obj. of verb, antecedent unexpressed*); qui (*obj. of prep.*); lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles.
whose, dont; de qui; duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles.
why, pourquoi.
wicked, méchant.
widow, veuve, *f.*
widower, veuf, *m.*
wife, femme, *f.*
wild, féroce; **wild** = *skittish*, ombrageux, *irr.*
will (= *wish, want, be willing*), vouloir [*no prep.*], *irr.*
willing: **to be willing**, vouloir bien [*no prep.*], *irr.*
wind, vent, *m.*
window, fenêtre, *f.*; **window glass**, vitres, *f. pl.*
wine, vin, *m.*; **wine cellar**, cave, *f.*
winter, hiver, *m.*
wise, sage.
wish (*vb.*), vouloir [*no prep.*], *irr.*: souhaiter [*no prep.*].
wish (*n.*), vœu, *m.*
wit (*n.*), esprit, *m.*; **a wit**, bel esprit, *m.*, *irr.*; homme d'esprit, *m.*
with, avec.
withdraw, se retirer.
within, en.
without (*prep.*), sans.
without (*conj.*), sans que.
witty, spirituel, *irr.*
wolf, loup, *m.*
woman, femme, *f.*
wonder, merveille, *f.*; **to do wonders**, faire merveille, *irr.*
wonderful, admirable.
wood, bois, *m.*; **woods**, bois, *m. pl.*
wool, laine, *f.*
word, mot, *m.*; parole, *f.*; **in a word**, en somme.

words: **beyond words**, au-dessus des paroles.
work (*vb.*), travailler.
work (*n.*), travail, *m.*, *irr.*; ouvrage, *m.*; **work** = *literary production*, ouvrage, *m.*, *or* œuvre, *f.*; **at work**, à l'œuvre.
world, monde, *m.*; **the New World**, le nouveau Monde.
worldly, mondain.
worn out, exténué (de).
worry, s'inquiéter (de).
worship, culte, *m.*
worst, pire.
worth (*n.*), valeur, *f.*
worth: **to be worth**, valoir [*no prep.*], *irr.*
worthy, digne.
wound, blesser.
wounded (*adj.*), blessé.
wretchedness, misère, *f.*
wring from, arracher (à).
wrinkled, ridé.
write, écrire, *irr.*
writer, écrivain, *m.*; **prose writer**, prosateur, *m.*; **a writer of comedy**, auteur comique, *m.*
writing, écriture, *f.*
wrong, tort, *m.*; **to be wrong**, avoir tort, *irr.*

year, an, *m.* (*considered as a unit*); année, *f.* (*considered in all its parts*).
yellow, jaune.
yes, oui.
yesterday, hier.
yet, encore; **yet** = *nevertheless*, pourtant; cependant.
yield, céder.
yonder, là-bas.
young, jeune.
your, votre, *irr.*
yours, le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres (*m. and f. pl.*).
youth, jeunesse, *f.*; **youth** = *young man*, jeune homme, *m.*

zeal, ardeur, *f.*

[illegible]	antonyms	adverb	noun
heureux	malheureux	heureusement	bonheur (m)
[illegible]			
[illegible]			
[illegible]			
[illegible]			
nombreux			
[illegible]			
[illegible]			
gros			
[illegible]			
[illegible]			
[illegible]			
[illegible]			
[illegible]			
[illegible]			
[illegible]			
[illegible]			
[illegible]			
[illegible]			
[illegible]			
[illegible]			
[illegible]			
[illegible]			